



Department of Mathematics, London School of Economics

Real Analysis (MA203)

Amol Sasane

2014/15

Contents

Preface	vii
Chapter 1. \mathbb{R} , metric spaces and \mathbb{R}^n	1
§1.1. Distance in \mathbb{R}	2
§1.2. Metric space	2
§1.3. Neighbourhoods and open sets	6
§1.4. Notes (not part of the course)	10
Chapter 2. Sequences	13
§2.1. Sequences in \mathbb{R}	13
§2.2. Sequences in metric spaces	15
§2.3. Pointwise versus uniform convergence	20
§2.4. Convergent sequences and closed sets	23
§2.5. Compact sets	24
§2.6. Notes (not part of the course)	27
Chapter 3. Series	29
§3.1. Series in \mathbb{R}	29
§3.2. Series in normed spaces	42
§3.3. Notes (not part of the course)	44
Chapter 4. Continuous functions	47
§4.1. Continuity of functions from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R}	47
§4.2. Continuity of maps between metric spaces	49
§4.3. Continuous maps and open sets	50
§4.4. Compactness and continuity	57
§4.5. Uniform continuity	59
Chapter 5. Differentiation	61
§5.1. Mean Value Theorem	63
§5.2. Uniform convergence and differentiation	66
§5.3. Derivative of maps from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R}^m	68

§5.4. Partial derivatives	70
§5.5. Notes (not part of the course)	73
Chapter 6. Epilogue: integration	75
§6.1. Motivation and definition	75
§6.2. Fundamental theorem of integral calculus	79
Bibliography	81
Index	83
Solutions	85
Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 1	85
Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 2	97
Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 3	109
Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 4	121
Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 5	134

Preface

What is Real Analysis?

First of all “Analysis” refers to the subdomain of Mathematics, which is roughly speaking an abstraction of the familiar subject of Calculus. Calculus arose as a box of tools enabling one to handle diverse problems in the applied sciences such as physics and engineering where quantities change (for example with time), and calculations based on “rates of change” were needed. It soon became evident that the foundations of Calculus needed to be made mathematically precise. This is roughly the subject of Mathematical Analysis, where Calculus is made rigorous. But another byproduct of this rigorization process is that mathematicians discovered that many of the things done in the set-up of usual calculus can be done in a much more general set up, enabling one to expand the domain of applications. We will study such things in this course.

Secondly, why do we use the adjective “Real”? We will start with the basic setting of making rigorous Calculus with *real* numbers, but we will also develop Calculus in more abstract settings, for example in \mathbb{R}^n . Using this adjective “Real” also highlights that the subject is different from “Complex Analysis” which is all about doing analysis in \mathbb{C} . (It turns out that Complex Analysis is a very specialized branch of analysis which acquires a somewhat peculiar character owing to the special geometric meaning associated with the multiplication of complex numbers in the complex plane.)

Amol Sasane

Thanks to Eleni Katirtzoglou and Tony Whelan for their help in revising these lecture notes.

Konrad Swanepoel

Chapter 1

\mathbb{R} , metric spaces and \mathbb{R}^n

We are familiar with concepts from calculus such as

- (1) convergence of sequences of real numbers,
- (2) continuity of a function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$,
- (3) differentiability of a function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

Once these notions are available, one can prove useful results involving such notions. For example, we have seen the following:

Theorem 1.1. *If $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous, then f has a minimizer on $[a, b]$.*

Theorem 1.2. *If $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is such that $f''(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $f'(x_0) = 0$, then x_0 is a minimizer of f .*

We will revisit these concepts in this course, and see that the same concepts can be defined in a much more general context, enabling one to prove results similar to the above in the more general set up. This means that we will be able to solve problems that arise in applications (such as optimization and differential equations) that we wouldn't be able to solve earlier with our limited tools. Besides these immediate applications, concepts and results from real analysis are fundamental in mathematics itself, and are needed in order to study almost any topic in mathematics.

In this chapter, we wish to emphasize that the key idea behind defining the above concepts is that of a distance between points. In the case when one works with real numbers, this distance is provided by the absolute value of the difference between the two numbers: thus the distance between $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ is taken as $|x - y|$. This coincides with our geometric understanding of distance when the real numbers are represented on the “number line”. For instance, the distance between -1 and 3 is 4 , and indeed $4 = |-1 - 3|$.

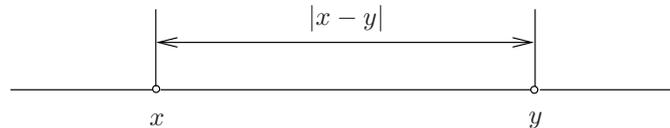


Figure 1. Distance between real numbers.

Recall for example, that a sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is said to *converge with limit* $L \in \mathbb{R}$ if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $n > N$, $|a_n - L| < \epsilon$. In other words, the sequence

converges to L if no matter what *distance* $\epsilon > 0$ is given, one can guarantee that all the terms of the sequence beyond a certain index N are at a *distance* of at most ϵ away from L (this is the inequality $|a_n - L| < \epsilon$). So we notice that in this notion of “convergence of a sequence” indeed the notion of distance played a crucial role. After all, we want to say that the terms of the sequence get “close” to the limit, and to measure closeness, we use the distance between points of \mathbb{R} .

A similar thing happens with all the other notions listed at the outset. For example, recall that a function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is said to be *continuous at* $c \in \mathbb{R}$ if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $|x - c| < \delta$, $|f(x) - f(c)| < \epsilon$. Roughly, given any distance ϵ , I can find a distance δ such that whenever I choose an x not farther than a distance δ from c , I am guaranteed that $f(x)$ is not farther than a distance of ϵ from $f(c)$. Again notice the key role played by the distance in this definition.

1.1. Distance in \mathbb{R}

The distance between points $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ is taken as $|x - y|$. Thus we have a map that associates to a pair $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$ of real numbers, the number $|x - y| \in \mathbb{R}$ which is the distance between x and y . We think of this map $(x, y) \mapsto |x - y| : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ as the “distance function” in \mathbb{R} .

Define $d : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $d(x, y) = |x - y|$ ($x, y \in \mathbb{R}$). Then it can be seen that this distance function d satisfies the following properties:

- (D1) For all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$, $d(x, y) \geq 0$. If $x \in \mathbb{R}$, then $d(x, x) = 0$. If $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ are such that $d(x, y) = 0$, then $x = y$.
- (D2) For all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$, $d(x, y) = d(y, x)$.
- (D3) For all $x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}$, $d(x, y) + d(y, z) \geq d(x, z)$.

It turns out that these are the key properties of the distance which are needed in developing analysis in \mathbb{R} . So it makes sense that when we want to generalize the situation with the set \mathbb{R} being replaced by an arbitrary set X , we must define a distance function

$$d : X \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

that associates a number (the distance!) to each pair of points $x, y \in X$, and which has the same properties (D1)-(D3) (with the obvious changes: $x, y, z \in X$). We do this in the next section.

1.2. Metric space

Definition 1.3. A *metric space* is a set X together with a function $d : X \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfying the following properties:

- (D1) (*Positive definiteness*) For all $x, y \in X$, $d(x, y) \geq 0$. For all $x \in X$, $d(x, x) = 0$. If $x, y \in X$ are such that $d(x, y) = 0$, then $x = y$.
- (D2) (*Symmetry*) For all $x, y \in X$, $d(x, y) = d(y, x)$.
- (D3) (*Triangle inequality*) For all $x, y, z \in X$, $d(x, y) + d(y, z) \geq d(x, z)$.

Such a d is referred to as a *distance function* or *metric*.

Let us consider some examples.

Example 1.4. $X := \mathbb{R}$, with $d(x, y) := |x - y|$ ($x, y \in \mathbb{R}$), is a metric space. ◇

Example 1.5. For any nonempty set X , define

$$d(x, y) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \neq y \\ 0 & \text{if } x = y. \end{cases}$$

This d is called the *discrete metric*. Then d satisfies (D1)-(D3), and so X with the discrete metric is a metric space. \diamond

Note that in particular \mathbb{R} with the discrete metric is a metric space as well. So the above two examples show that the distance function in a metric space is not unique, and what metric is to be used depends on the application one has in mind. Hence whenever we speak of a metric space, we always need to specify not just the set X but also the distance function d being considered. So often we say “consider the metric space (X, d) ”, where X is the set in question, and $d : X \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is the metric considered.

However, for some sets, there are some natural candidates for distance functions. One such example is the following one.

Example 1.6 (Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^n). In \mathbb{R}^2 and \mathbb{R}^3 , where we can think of vectors as points in the plane or points in the space, we can use the distance between two points as the length of the line segment joining these points. Thus (by Pythagoras’s Theorem) in \mathbb{R}^2 , we may use

$$d(x, y) = \sqrt{(x_1 - y_1)^2 + (x_2 - y_2)^2}$$

as the distance between the points $x = (x_1, x_2)$ and $y = (y_1, y_2)$ in \mathbb{R}^2 . Similarly, in \mathbb{R}^3 , one may use

$$d(x, y) = \sqrt{(x_1 - y_1)^2 + (x_2 - y_2)^2 + (x_3 - y_3)^2}$$

as the distance between the points $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$ and $y = (y_1, y_2, y_3)$ in \mathbb{R}^3 . See Figure 2.

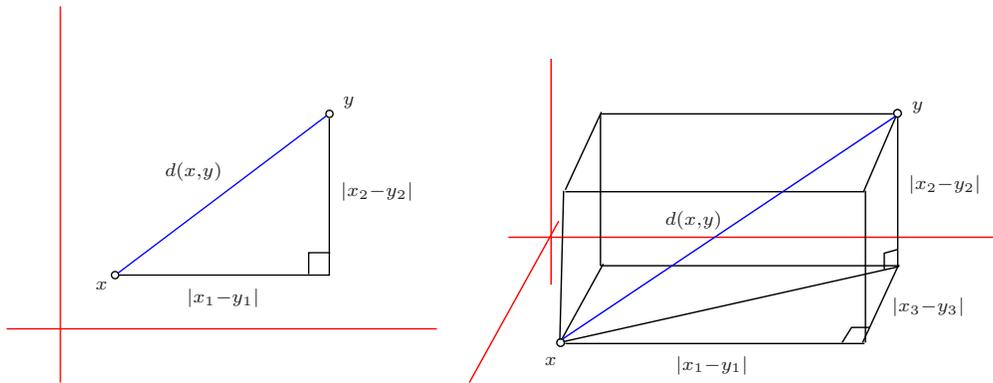


Figure 2. Distance in \mathbb{R}^2 and \mathbb{R}^3 .

In an analogous manner to \mathbb{R}^2 and \mathbb{R}^3 , more generally, for $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n =: X$, we define the *Euclidean distance* by

$$d(x, y) = \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^n (x_k - y_k)^2} = \sqrt{(x_1 - y_1)^2 + \cdots + (x_n - y_n)^2}$$

for

$$x = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad y = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

Then \mathbb{R}^n is a metric space with the Euclidean distance, and is referred to as the *Euclidean space*. The verification of (D3) can be done by using the *Cauchy-Schwarz inequality*: For real numbers

x_1, \dots, x_n and y_1, \dots, y_n , there holds that

$$\left(\sum_{k=1}^n x_k^2\right)\left(\sum_{k=1}^n y_k^2\right) \geq \left(\sum_{k=1}^n x_k y_k\right)^2.$$

This last property (D3) is sometimes referred to as the triangle inequality. The reason behind this is that, for triangles in Euclidean geometry of the plane, we know that the sum of the lengths of two sides of a triangle is at least as much as the length of the third side. If we now imagine the points $x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}^2$ as the three vertices of a triangle, then this is what (D3) says; see Figure 3.

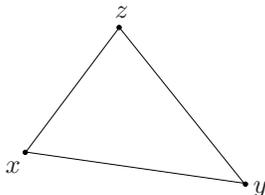


Figure 3. How the triangle inequality gets its name.

Throughout this course, whenever we refer to \mathbb{R}^n as a metric space, unless specified otherwise, we mean that it is equipped with this Euclidean metric. Note that Example 1.4 corresponds to the case when $n = 1$. \diamond

Exercise 1.7. Verify that the d given in Example 1.5 does satisfy (D1)-(D3).

Exercise 1.8. One can show the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality as follows: Let x, y be vectors in \mathbb{R}^n with the components x_1, \dots, x_n and y_1, \dots, y_n , respectively. For $t \in \mathbb{R}$, consider the function

$$f(t) = (x + ty)^\top (x + ty) = x^\top x + 2tx^\top y + t^2 y^\top y.$$

From the second expression, we see that f is a quadratic function of the variable t . It is clear from the first expression that $f(t)$, being the sum of squares

$$\sum_{k=1}^n (x_k + ty_k)^2,$$

is nonnegative for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$. This means that the discriminant of f must be ≤ 0 , since otherwise, f would have two distinct real roots, and would then have negative values between these roots! Calculate the discriminant of the quadratic function and show that its nonpositivity yields the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality.

Normed space. Frequently in applications, one needs a metric not just in any old set X , but in a *vector space* X .

Recall that a (real) vector space X , is just a set X with the two operations of vector addition $+$: $X \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{X}$ and scalar multiplication \cdot : $\mathbb{R} \times X \rightarrow X$ which together satisfy the vector space axioms.

But now if one wants to also do analysis in a vector space X , there is so far no ready-made available notion of distance between vectors. One way of creating a distance in a vector space is to equip it with a “norm” $\|\cdot\|$, which is the analogue of absolute value $|\cdot|$ in the vector space \mathbb{R} . The distance function is then created by taking the norm $\|x - y\|$ of the difference between pairs of vectors $x, y \in X$, just like in \mathbb{R} the Euclidean distance between $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ was taken as $|x - y|$.

Definition 1.9. A *normed space* is a vector space $(X, +, \cdot)$ together with a *norm*, namely, a function $\|\cdot\| : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfying the following properties:

- (N1) (*Positive definiteness*) For all $x \in X$, $\|x\| \geq 0$. If $x \in X$ is such that $\|x\| = 0$, then $x = \mathbf{0}$ (the zero vector in X).

(N2) (*Positive homogeneity*) For all $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $x \in X$, $\|\alpha \cdot x\| = |\alpha| \|x\|$.

(N3) (*Triangle inequality*) For all $x, y \in X$, $\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\|$.

If X is a normed space then

$$d(x, y) := \|x - y\| \quad (x, y \in X)$$

satisfies (D1)–(D3) and makes X a metric space (Exercise 1.11). This distance is referred to as the *induced distance* in the normed space $(X, \|\cdot\|)$. Clearly then

$$\|x\| = \|x - \mathbf{0}\| = d(x, \mathbf{0}),$$

and so the norm of a vector is the induced distance to the zero vector in a normed space $(X, \|\cdot\|)$.

Example 1.10. \mathbb{R} is a vector space with the usual operations of addition and multiplication. It is easy to see that the absolute value function

$$x \mapsto |x| \quad (x \in \mathbb{R})$$

satisfies (N1)–(N3), and so \mathbb{R} is a normed space, and the induced distance is the usual Euclidean metric in \mathbb{R} .

More generally, in the vector space \mathbb{R}^n , with addition and scalar multiplication defined componentwise, we can introduce the 2-norm as

$$\|x\|_2 := \sqrt{x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2}$$

for vectors $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ having components x_1, \dots, x_n . Then $\|\cdot\|_2$ satisfies (N1)–(N3) and makes \mathbb{R}^n a normed space. The induced metric is then the usual Euclidean metric in \mathbb{R}^n . \diamond

Exercise 1.11. Verify that if X is a normed space with norm $\|\cdot\|$, then $d: X \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $d(x, y) = \|x - y\|$ satisfies (D1)–(D3).

Hint: Make sure that you use each of the properties (N1), (N2) and (N3).

Exercise 1.12. Verify that the norm $\|\cdot\|_2$ given on \mathbb{R}^n in Example 1.10 does satisfy (N1)–(N3).

Exercise 1.13. (*) Let X be a metric space with a metric d . Define $d_1: X \times X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$d_1(x, y) = \frac{d(x, y)}{1 + d(x, y)} \quad (x, y \in X).$$

Note that $d_1(x, y) \leq 1$ for all $x, y \in X$. Show that d_1 is a metric on X .

Exercise 1.14. Consider the vector space $\mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ of matrices with m rows and n columns of real numbers, with the usual entrywise addition and scalar multiplication. Define for $M \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ with the entry in the i th row and j th column denoted by m_{ij} , for $1 \leq i \leq m$, $1 \leq j \leq n$, the number

$$\|M\|_\infty := \max_{1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n} |m_{ij}|.$$

Show that $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ defines a norm on $\mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$.

Exercise 1.15. Let $C[a, b]$ denote the set of all continuous functions $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then $C[a, b]$ is a vector space with addition and scalar multiplication defined pointwise. If $f \in C[a, b]$, define

$$\|f\|_\infty = \max_{x \in [a, b]} |f(x)|.$$

Note that the function $x \mapsto |f(x)|$ is continuous on $[a, b]$, and so by the Extreme Value Theorem, the above maximum exists.

(1) Show that $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ is a norm on $C[a, b]$.

(2) Let $f \in C[a, b]$ and let $\epsilon > 0$. Consider the set $B(f, \epsilon) := \{g \in C[a, b] : \|f - g\|_\infty < \epsilon\}$. Draw a picture to explain the geometric significance of the statement $g \in B(f, \epsilon)$.

Exercise 1.16. $C[a, b]$ can also be equipped with other norms. For example, prove that

$$\|f\|_1 := \int_a^b |f(x)| dx \quad (f \in C[a, b])$$

also defines a norm on $C[a, b]$.

Exercise 1.17. If (X, d) is a metric space, and if $Y \subseteq X$, then show that $(Y, d|_{Y \times Y})$ is a metric space. (Here $d|_{Y \times Y}$ denotes the restriction of d to the set $Y \times Y$, that is, $d|_{Y \times Y}(y_1, y_2) = d(y_1, y_2)$ for $y_1, y_2 \in Y$.) Hence every subset of a metric space is itself a metric space with the restriction of the original metric. The metric $d|_{Y \times Y}$ is referred to as the *induced metric on Y by d* or the *subspace metric of d with respect to Y* , and the metric space $(Y, d|_{Y \times Y})$ is called a *metric subspace* of (X, d) .

Exercise 1.18. (*) The set of integers $\mathbb{Z} (\subseteq \mathbb{R})$ inherits the Euclidean metric from \mathbb{R} , but it also carries a very different metric, called the *p -adic metric*. Given a prime number p , and an integer n , the p -adic “norm”¹ of n is $|n|_p := 1/p^k$, where k is the largest power of p that divides n . The norm of 0 is by definition 0. The more factors of p , the smaller the p -norm. The p -adic metric² on \mathbb{Z} is $d_p(x, y) := |x - y|_p$ ($x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$).

(1) Prove that if $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $|x + y|_p \leq \max\{|x|_p, |y|_p\}$.

(2) Show that d_p is a metric on \mathbb{Z} .

Exercise 1.19. (*) Let ℓ^2 denote the set of all “square summable” sequences of real numbers:

$$\ell^2 = \left\{ (a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} : \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|^2 < \infty \right\}.$$

(1) Show that ℓ^2 is a vector space with addition and scalar multiplication defined termwise.

(2) Let $\|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 := \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|^2}$ for $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \in \ell^2$. Prove that $\|\cdot\|_2$ defines a norm on ℓ^2 .

So ℓ^2 is an infinite-dimensional analogue of the Euclidean space $(\mathbb{R}^n, \|\cdot\|_2)$.

Exercise 1.20 (Hamming Distance). Let \mathbb{F}_2^n be the set of all ordered n -tuples of zeros and ones. For example, $\mathbb{F}_2^3 = \{000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110, 111\}$. For $x, y \in \mathbb{F}_2^n$, let

$$d(x, y) = \text{the number of places where } x \text{ and } y \text{ have different entries.}$$

For example, in \mathbb{F}_2^3 , we have $d(110, 110) = 0$, $d(010, 110) = 1$ and $d(101, 010) = 3$. Show that (\mathbb{F}_2^n, d) is a metric space. (This metric is used in the digital world, in coding and information theory.)

1.3. Neighbourhoods and open sets

Let (X, d) be a metric space. Now that we have a metric, we can describe “neighbourhoods” of points by considering sets which include all points whose distance to the given point is not too large.

Definition 1.21 (Open ball). Let (X, d) be a metric space. If $x \in X$ and $r > 0$, we call the set

$$B(x, r) = \{y \in X : d(x, y) < r\}$$

the *open ball* centered at x with radius r .

The picture we have in mind is shown in Figure 4.

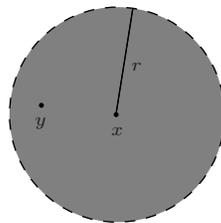


Figure 4. The open ball $B(x, r)$.

¹Note that \mathbb{Z} is not a real vector space and so this is not really a norm in the sense we have learnt.

²Some physicists propose this to be the appropriate metric for the fabric of space-time. Thus metrics are something we choose, depending on context. It is not something that falls out of the sky!

In the sequel, for example in our study of continuous functions, *open sets* will play an important role. Here is the definition.

Definition 1.22 (Open set). Let (X, d) be a metric space. A set $U \subseteq X$ is said to be *open* if for every $x \in U$, there exists an $r > 0$ such that $B(x, r) \subseteq U$.

Note that the radius r can depend on the choice of the point x . See Figure 5. Roughly speaking, in an open set, no matter which point you take in it, there is always some “room” around it consisting only of points of the open set.

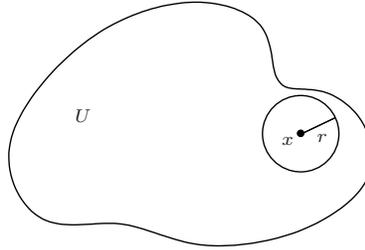


Figure 5. Open set.

Example 1.23. Let us show that the set (a, b) is open in \mathbb{R} . Given any $x \in (a, b)$, we have $a < x < b$. Motivated by Figure 6, let us take $r = \min\{x - a, b - x\}$. Then we see that $r > 0$ and whenever $|y - x| < r$, we have $-r < y - x < r$. So

$$a = x - (x - a) \leq x - r < y < x + r \leq x + (b - x) = b,$$

that is, $y \in (a, b)$. Hence $B(x, r) \subseteq (a, b)$. Consequently, (a, b) is open.

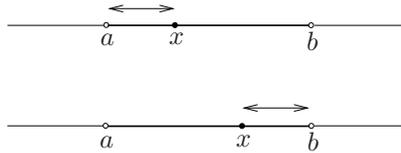


Figure 6. (a, b) is open in \mathbb{R} .

On the other hand, the interval $[a, b]$ is not open, because $x := a \in [a, b]$, but no matter how small an $r > 0$ we take, the set $B(a, r) = \{y \in \mathbb{R} : |y - a| < r\} = (a - r, a + r)$ contains points that do not belong to $[a, b]$: for example,

$$a - \frac{r}{2} \in B(a, r) \text{ but } a - \frac{r}{2} \notin [a, b].$$

Figure 7 illustrates this. ◇



Figure 7. $[a, b]$ is not open in \mathbb{R} .

Example 1.24. The set X is open, since given an $x \in X$, we can take any $r > 0$, and notice that $B(x, r) \subseteq X$ trivially.

The empty set \emptyset is also open (“vacuously”). Indeed, the reasoning is as follows: can one show an x for which there is no $r > 0$ such that $B(x, r) \subseteq \emptyset$? And the answer is no, because there is no

x in the empty set (let alone an x which has the extra property that there is no $r > 0$ such that $B(x, r) \subseteq \emptyset!$). \diamond

Exercise 1.25. Let (X, d) be a metric space, $x \in X$ and $r > 0$. Show that the open ball $B(x, r)$ is an open set.

Lemma 1.26. *Any finite intersection of open sets is open.*

Proof. It is enough to consider two open sets, as the general case follows immediately by induction on the number of sets. Let U_1, U_2 be two open sets. Let $x \in U_1 \cap U_2$. Then there exist $r_1 > 0$, $r_2 > 0$ such that $B(x, r_1) \subseteq U_1$ and $B(x, r_2) \subseteq U_2$. Take $r = \min\{r_1, r_2\}$. Then $r > 0$, and we claim that $B(x, r) \subseteq U_1 \cap U_2$. To see this, let $y \in B(x, r)$. Then $d(x, y) < r_1$ and $d(x, y) < r_2$. So $y \in B(x, r_1) \cap B(x, r_2) \subseteq U_1 \cap U_2$. \square

Example 1.27. The finiteness condition in the above lemma cannot be dropped. Here is an example. Consider the open sets

$$U_n := \left(-\frac{1}{n}, \frac{1}{n}\right) \quad (n \in \mathbb{N})$$

in \mathbb{R} . Then we have $\bigcap_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U_n = \{0\}$, which is not open in \mathbb{R} . \diamond

Lemma 1.28. *Any union of open sets is open.*

Proof. Let U_i ($i \in I$) be a family of open sets indexed³ by the set I . If

$$x \in \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i,$$

then $x \in U_{i_*}$ for some $i_* \in I$. But as U_{i_*} is open, there exists a $r > 0$ such that $B(x, r) \subseteq U_{i_*}$. Thus

$$B(x, r) \subseteq U_{i_*} \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i,$$

and so we see that the union $\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$ is open. \square

Definition 1.29 (Closed set). Let (X, d) be a metric space. A set F is *closed* if its complement $X \setminus F$ is open.

Example 1.30. $[a, b]$ is closed in \mathbb{R} . Indeed, its complement $\mathbb{R} \setminus [a, b]$ is the union of the two open sets $(-\infty, a)$ and (b, ∞) . Hence $\mathbb{R} \setminus [a, b]$ is open, and $[a, b]$ is closed.

The set $(-\infty, b]$ is closed in \mathbb{R} . (Why?)

The sets $(a, b]$, $[a, b)$ are neither open nor closed in \mathbb{R} . (Why?) \diamond

Example 1.31. X, \emptyset are closed. \diamond

Exercise 1.32. Show that arbitrary intersections of closed sets are closed. Prove that a finite union of closed sets is closed. Can the finiteness condition be dropped in the previous claim?

Exercise 1.33. We know that the segment $(0, 1)$ is open in \mathbb{R} . Show that the segment $(0, 1)$ considered as a subset of the plane, that is, the set $I = \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : 0 < x < 1, y = 0\}$ is not open in \mathbb{R}^2 .

Exercise 1.34. Consider the following three metrics on \mathbb{R}^2 : for $x = (x_1, x_2), y = (y_1, y_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$,

$$\begin{aligned} d_1(x, y) &:= |x_1 - y_1| + |x_2 - y_2|, \\ d_2(x, y) &:= \sqrt{(x_1 - y_1)^2 + (x_2 - y_2)^2}, \\ d_\infty(x, y) &:= \max\{|x_1 - y_1|, |x_2 - y_2|\}. \end{aligned}$$

We already know that d_2 defines a metric on \mathbb{R}^2 : it is just the Euclidean metric induced by the norm $\|\cdot\|_2$.

³This means that we have a set I , and for each $i \in I$, there is a set U_i .

- (1) Verify that d_1 and d_∞ are also metrics on \mathbb{R}^2 .
- (2) Sketch the “unit balls” $B(\mathbf{0}, 1)$ in each of the metrics.
- (3) Give a pictorial “proof without words” to show that a set U is open in \mathbb{R}^2 in the Euclidean metric if and only if it is open when \mathbb{R}^2 is equipped with the metric d_1 or the metric d_∞ . *Hint:* Inside every square you can draw a circle, and inside every circle, you can draw a square!

Exercise 1.35. Determine if the following statements are true or false. Give reasons for your answers.

- (1) If a set is not open, then it is closed.
- (2) If a set is open, then it is not closed.
- (3) There are sets which are both open and closed.
- (4) There are sets which are neither open nor closed.
- (5) \mathbb{Q} is open in \mathbb{R} .
- (6) (*) \mathbb{Q} is closed in \mathbb{R} .
- (7) \mathbb{Z} is closed in \mathbb{R} .

Exercise 1.36. Show that the unit sphere with center $\mathbf{0}$ in \mathbb{R}^3 , namely the set

$$\mathbb{S}^2 := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 : x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 = 1\}$$

is closed in \mathbb{R}^3 .

Exercise 1.37. Let (X, d) be a metric space. Show that a singleton (a subset of X containing precisely one element) is always closed. Conclude that every finite subset of X is closed.

Exercise 1.38. Let X be any nonempty set equipped with the discrete metric. Prove that every subset Y of X is both open and closed.

Exercise 1.39. (*) A subset Y of a metric space (X, d) is said to be *dense* in X if for all $x \in X$ and all $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $y \in Y$ such that $d(x, y) < \epsilon$. (That is, if we take any $x \in X$ and consider any ball $B(x, \epsilon)$ centered at x , it contains a point from Y .) Show that \mathbb{Q} is dense in \mathbb{R} by proceeding as follows.

If $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x < y$, then show that there is a $q \in \mathbb{Q}$ such that $x < q < y$. *Hint:* By the Archimedean property⁴ of \mathbb{R} , there is a positive integer n such that $n(y - x) > 1$. Next there are positive integers m_1, m_2 such that $m_1 > nx$ and $m_2 > -nx$ so that $-m_2 < nx < m_1$. Hence there is an integer m such that $m - 1 \leq nx < m$. Consequently $nx < m \leq 1 + nx < ny$, which gives the desired result.

Conclude that \mathbb{Q} is dense in \mathbb{R} .

Exercise 1.40. Is the set $\mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q}$ of irrational numbers dense in \mathbb{R} ? *Hint:* Take any $x \in \mathbb{R}$. If x is irrational itself, then we may just take y to be x and we are done; whereas if x is rational, then take $y = x + \sqrt{2}/n$ with a sufficiently large n .

Exercise 1.41. A subset C of a normed space X is called *convex* if for all $x, y \in C$, and all $t \in (0, 1)$, $(1 - t)x + ty \in C$. (Geometrically, this means that for any pair of points in C , the “line segment” joining them also lies in C .)

- (1) Show that the open ball $B(0, r)$ with center $0 \in X$ and radius $r > 0$ is convex.
- (2) Is the unit circle $\mathbb{S}^1 = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 : \|x\|_2 = 1\}$ a convex set in \mathbb{R}^2 ?
- (3) Let $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ and $b \in \mathbb{R}^m$. Prove that the “Linear Programming simplex”⁵

$$\Sigma := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : Ax = b, x_1 \geq 0, \dots, x_n \geq 0\}$$

is a convex set in \mathbb{R}^n .

Exercise 1.42. Define $d_e : \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$d_e(u, v) = \begin{cases} \|u\|_2 + \|v\|_2 & \text{if } u \neq v, \\ 0 & \text{if } u = v, \end{cases} \quad (u, v \in \mathbb{R}^2).$$

We call this metric the “express railway metric”. (For example in the British context, to get from A to B , travel via London, the origin.)

⁴The Archimedean property of \mathbb{R} says that if $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x > 0$, then there exists an $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $y < nx$. See the notes for MA103.

⁵This set arises the “feasible set” in a certain optimization problem in \mathbb{R}^n , where the constraints are described by a bunch of linear inequalities.

On the other hand, consider $d_s : \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$d_s(u, v) = \begin{cases} \|u\|_2 + \|v\|_2 & \text{if } u, v \text{ are linearly independent,} \\ \|u - v\|_2 & \text{if } u, v \text{ are linearly dependent.} \end{cases} \quad (u, v \in \mathbb{R}^2).$$

We call this the “stopping railway metric”. (To get from A to B travel via London, unless A and B are on the same London route.)

Show that the express railway metric and the stopping railway metric are indeed metrics on \mathbb{R}^2 .

1.4. Notes (not part of the course)

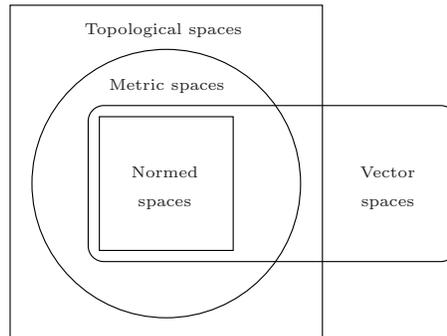
Topology. If we look at the collection \mathcal{O} of open sets in a metric space (X, d) , we notice that it has the following three properties:

(T1) $\emptyset, X \in \mathcal{O}$.

(T2) If U_i ($i \in I$) is family of sets from \mathcal{O} indexed by I , then $\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i \in \mathcal{O}$.

(T3) If U_1, \dots, U_n is a finite collection of sets from \mathcal{O} , then $\bigcap_{i=1}^n U_i \in \mathcal{O}$.

More generally, if X is any set (not necessarily one equipped with a metric), then any collection \mathcal{O} of subsets of X that satisfy the properties (T1), (T2), (T3) is called a *topology on X* and (X, \mathcal{O}) is called a *topological space*. So for a metric space X , if we take \mathcal{O} to be family of open sets in X , then we obtain a topological space. More generally, if one has a topological space (X, \mathcal{O}) given by the topology \mathcal{O} , we call each element of \mathcal{O} *open*.



It turns out that one can in fact extend some of the notions from Real Analysis (such as convergence of sequences and continuity of maps) in the even more general set up of topological spaces, devoid of any metric, where the notion of closeness is specified by considering arbitrary open neighbourhoods provided by elements of \mathcal{O} . In some applications this is exactly the right thing needed, but we will not go into such abstractions in this course. In fact, this is a very broad subdiscipline of mathematics called *Topology*.

Construction of the set of real numbers. In these notes, we treat the real number system \mathbb{R} as a given. But one might wonder if we can take the existence of real numbers on faith alone. It turns out that a mathematical proof of its existence can be given. Roughly, we are already familiar with the natural numbers, the integers, and the rational numbers, and their rigorous mathematical construction is also relatively straightforward. However, the set \mathbb{Q} of rational numbers has “holes” (for example in MA103 we have seen that this manifests itself in the fact that \mathbb{Q} does not possess the least upper bound property). The set of real numbers \mathbb{R} is obtained by “filling these holes”. There are several ways of doing this. One is by a general method called “completion of metric spaces”. Another way, which is more intuitive, is via “(Dedekind) cuts”, where we view real numbers as places where a line may be cut with scissors. More precisely, a *cut* $A|B$ in \mathbb{Q} is a pair of subsets A, B of \mathbb{Q} such that $A \cup B = \mathbb{Q}$, $A \neq \emptyset$, $B \neq \emptyset$, $A \cap B = \emptyset$, if $a \in A$ and $b \in B$ then $a < b$, and A contains no largest element. \mathbb{R} is then taken as the set of all cuts $A|B$. Here are two examples of cuts:

$$\begin{aligned} A|B &= \{r \in \mathbb{Q} : r < 1\} | \{r \in \mathbb{Q} : r \geq 1\} \\ A|B &= \{r \in \mathbb{Q} : r \leq 0 \text{ or } r^2 < 2\} | \{r \in \mathbb{Q} : r > 0 \text{ and } r^2 \geq 2\}. \end{aligned}$$

It turns out that \mathbb{R} is a field containing \mathbb{Q} , and it possesses the least upper bound property. The interested reader is referred to the Appendix to Chapter 1 in the classic textbook by Walter Rudin [R].

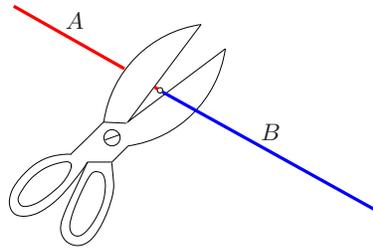


Figure 8. Dedekind cut.

Chapter 2

Sequences

In this chapter we study sequences in metric spaces. The notion of a convergent sequence is an important concept in Analysis. Besides its theoretical importance, it is also a natural concept arising in applications when one talks about better and better approximations to the solution of a problem using a numerical scheme. For example the method of Archimedes for finding the area of a circle by sandwiching it between the areas of a circumscribed and an inscribed regular polygon of ever increasing number of sides. There are also numerical schemes for finding a minimizer of a convex function (Newton's method), or for finding a solution to an ordinary differential equation (Euler's method), where convergence in more general metric spaces (such as \mathbb{R}^n or $C[a, b]$) will play a role.

Before proceeding onto sequences in general metric spaces, let us first begin with (numerical) sequences in \mathbb{R} .

2.1. Sequences in \mathbb{R}

Let us recall the definition of a convergent sequence of real numbers.

Definition 2.1. A sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of real numbers is said to be *convergent with limit* $L \in \mathbb{R}$ if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $n > N$, $|a_n - L| < \epsilon$.

We have learnt that the limit of a convergent sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is unique, and we denote it by

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n.$$

We have also learnt the following important result¹:

Theorem 2.2 (Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem). *Every bounded sequence has a convergent subsequence.*

An important consequence of this result is the fact that in \mathbb{R} , the set of convergent sequences coincides with the set of Cauchy sequences. Let us first recall the definition of a Cauchy sequence².

Definition 2.3. A sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of real numbers is said to be a *Cauchy sequence* if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $m, n > N$, $|a_n - a_m| < \epsilon$.

Roughly speaking, we can make the terms of the sequence arbitrarily close to each other provided we go far enough in the sequence.

¹See Theorem 1.2.8 on page 34 of the lecture notes for the second part of MA103.

²See Exercise 6 on page 18 of the lecture notes for the second part of MA103.

Example 2.4. The sequence $(\frac{1}{n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy. Indeed, we have $|\frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{m}| \leq \frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{m} < \frac{1}{N} + \frac{1}{N} = \frac{2}{N}$ whenever $n, m > N$. Thus given $\epsilon > 0$, we can choose $N \in \mathbb{N}$ larger than $\frac{2}{\epsilon}$ so that we then have $|\frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{m}| < \frac{2}{N} < \epsilon$ for all $n, m > N$. Consequently, $(\frac{1}{n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy. \diamond

Exercise 2.5. Show that if $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence, then $(a_{n+1} - a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0.

Example 2.6. This example shows that for a sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ to be Cauchy, it is not enough that $(a_{n+1} - a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0. Take $a_n := \sqrt{n}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$). Then

$$a_{n+1} - a_n = \sqrt{n+1} - \sqrt{n} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{n+1} + \sqrt{n}} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0,$$

but $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is not Cauchy, since for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $a_{4n} - a_n = \sqrt{4n} - \sqrt{n} = \sqrt{n} \geq 1$. \diamond

The next result says that Cauchyness is a *necessary* condition for a sequence to be convergent.

Lemma 2.7. *Every convergent sequence is Cauchy.*

Proof. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence of real numbers that converges to L . Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|a_n - L| < \frac{\epsilon}{2}$. Thus for $n, m > N$, we have

$$|a_n - a_m| = |a_n - L + L - a_m| \leq |a_n - L| + |a_m - L| < \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} = \epsilon.$$

So the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence. \square

Now we will prove the remarkable fact in \mathbb{R} , Cauchyness turns out to be also a *sufficient* condition for the sequence to be convergent. In other words, in \mathbb{R} , every Cauchy sequence is convergent. This is a very useful fact since, in order to prove that a sequence is convergent using the definition, we would need to guess what the limit is. In contrast, checking whether or not a sequence is Cauchy needs only knowledge of the terms of the sequence, and no guesswork regarding the limit is needed. So this is a powerful technique for proving existence results.

Theorem 2.8. *Every Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R} is convergent.*

Proof. There are three main steps. First we show that every Cauchy sequence is bounded. Then we use the Bolzano-Weierstrass theorem to conclude that it must have a convergent subsequence. Finally we show that a Cauchy sequence having a convergent subsequence must itself be convergent.

STEP 1. Suppose that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence. Choose any positive ϵ , say $\epsilon = 1$. Then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n, m > N$, $|a_n - a_m| < \epsilon$. In particular, with $m = N + 1 > N$, and $n > N$, $|a_n - a_{N+1}| < \epsilon$. Hence by the triangle inequality, for all $n > N$,

$$|a_n| = |a_n - a_{N+1} + a_{N+1}| \leq |a_n - a_{N+1}| + |a_{N+1}| < 1 + |a_{N+1}|.$$

On the other hand, for $n \leq N$, $|a_n| \leq \max\{|a_1|, \dots, |a_N|, |a_{N+1}| + 1\} =: M$. Consequently, $|a_n| \leq M$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), that is, the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded.

STEP 2. By the Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem, $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ has a convergent subsequence $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ that is convergent, to L , say.

STEP 3. Finally we show that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is also convergent with limit L . Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n, m > N$,

$$|a_n - a_m| < \frac{\epsilon}{2}. \quad (2.1)$$

Also, since $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to L , we can find a $n_K > N$ such that $|a_{n_K} - L| < \frac{\epsilon}{2}$. Taking $m = n_K$ in (2.1), we have for all $n > N$ that

$$|a_n - L| = |a_n - a_{n_K} + a_{n_K} - L| \leq |a_n - a_{n_K}| + |a_{n_K} - L| < \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} = \epsilon.$$

Thus $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is also convergent with limit L , and this completes the proof. \square

Exercise 2.9. Determine if the following statements are true or false. Give reasons for your answers.

- (1) Every subsequence of a convergent real sequence is convergent.
- (2) Every subsequence of a divergent real sequence is divergent.
- (3) Every subsequence of a bounded real sequence is bounded.
- (4) Every subsequence of an unbounded real sequence is unbounded.
- (5) Every subsequence of a monotone real sequence is monotone.
- (6) Every subsequence of a nonmonotone real sequence is nonmonotone.
- (7) If every subsequence of a real sequence converges, the sequence itself converges.
- (8) If for a real sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, the sequences $(a_{2n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(a_{2n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ both converge, then $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges.
- (9) If for a real sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, the sequences $(a_{2n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(a_{2n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ both converge to the same limit, then $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges.

Exercise 2.10. Fill in the blanks in the following proof of the fact that *every bounded increasing sequence of real numbers converges*.

Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a bounded increasing sequence of real numbers. Let M be the _____ of the set of upper bounds of $\{a_n : n \in \mathbb{N}\}$. The existence of M is guaranteed by the _____ of the set of real numbers. We show that M is the _____ of $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$. Taking $\epsilon > 0$, we must show that there exists a positive integer N such that _____ for all $n > N$. Since $M - \epsilon < M$, $M - \epsilon$ is not _____ of $\{a_n : n \in \mathbb{N}\}$. Therefore there exists N with _____ $\geq a_N >$ _____. Since $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is _____, $|a_n - M| < \epsilon$ for all $n \geq N$. \square

Exercise 2.11. (*) Consider the sequence

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right)^1, \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right)^2, \left(1 + \frac{1}{3}\right)^3, \dots$$

- (1) Show that the sequence is increasing.
- (2) Prove that each term in the sequence is smaller than 3.

Hint: Use the Binomial Theorem.

From the previous exercise, one can conclude that the sequence converges. In fact it can be shown that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n = e := 1 + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \dots$$

Exercise 2.12. For each of the following sequences, determine whether it converges or not, and find the limit in case of convergence. Give reasons for your answers.

- (1) $(\cos(\pi n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$
- (2) $(1 + n^2)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$
- (3) $\left(\frac{\sin n}{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$
- (4) $\left(1 - \frac{3n^2}{n+1}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$
- (5) $\left(n^{\frac{1}{n}}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$
- (6) 0.9, 0.99, 0.999, ...

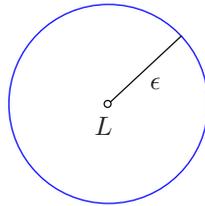
2.2. Sequences in metric spaces

We now give the notion of convergence of a sequence in a general metric space. We will see that essentially the definition is the same as in \mathbb{R} , except that instead of having the distance between

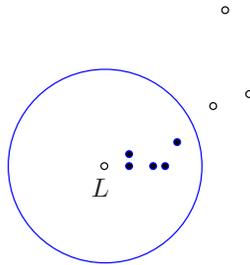
the n th term and the limit L given by $|a_n - L|$, now we will replace it by $d(a_n, L)$ in a general metric space with metric d .

Definition 2.13. A sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of points in a metric space (X, d) is said to be *convergent* with limit $L \in X$ if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $n > N$, $d(a_n, L) < \epsilon$.

Let us understand this definition pictorially. We have been given a sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of points and a candidate L for its limit. We are allowed to say that this sequence converges to L if given any $\epsilon > 0$, that is, no matter how small a ball we consider around L ,



we can find an index N such that all the terms of the sequence beyond this index lie inside the ball.



Lemma 2.14. *The limit of a convergent sequence in a metric space is unique.*

Proof. Suppose that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a convergent sequence, and let it have two distinct limits L_1 and L_2 . Then $d(L_1, L_2) > 0$. Set

$$\epsilon = \frac{1}{2}d(L_1, L_2) > 0.$$

Then there exists an N_1 such that for all $n > N_1$, $d(a_n, L_1) < \epsilon$. Also, there exists an N_2 such that for all $n > N_2$, $d(a_n, L_2) < \epsilon$. Hence for any $n > \max\{N_1, N_2\}$, we have

$$d(L_1, L_2) \leq d(L_1, a_n) + d(a_n, L_2) < \epsilon + \epsilon = d(L_1, L_2),$$

a contradiction. Thus the limit of $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is unique. \square

If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a convergent sequence, then we will denote its limit by $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n$.

Exercise 2.15. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^d . Show that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit L if and only if for every $k \in \{1, \dots, d\}$, the sequence $(a_n^{(k)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in \mathbb{R} formed by the k th component of the terms of $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit $L^{(k)}$. (Here we use the notation $v^{(k)}$ to mean the k th component of a vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^d$.)

Exercise 2.16. Consider the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^2 :

$$a_n := \begin{bmatrix} \frac{n}{4n+2} \\ \frac{n^2}{n^2+1} \end{bmatrix} \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}).$$

Show that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent. What is its limit?

Exercise 2.17. Let X be a nonempty set equipped with the discrete metric. Show that a sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent if and only if it is eventually a constant sequence (that is, there is a $c \in X$ and an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$, $a_n = c$).

Exercise 2.18. (*) Let (X, d) be a metric space and let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be convergent sequences in X with limits a and b , respectively. Prove that $(d(a_n, b_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a convergent sequence in \mathbb{R} with limit $d(a, b)$. *Hint:* $d(a_n, b_n) \leq d(a_n, a) + d(a, b) + d(b, b_n)$.

Exercise 2.19. Let $v_1 = (x_1, y_1) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ be such that $0 < x_1 < y_1$. Define

$$v_{n+1} := (x_{n+1}, y_{n+1}) := \left(\sqrt{x_n y_n}, \frac{x_n + y_n}{2} \right) \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}).$$

- (1) Show that $0 < x_n < x_{n+1} < y_{n+1} < y_n$ and that $y_{n+1} - x_{n+1} < y_{n+1} - x_n = \frac{y_n - x_n}{2}$.
- (2) Conclude that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} v_n$ exists and equals (c, c) for some number $c \in \mathbb{R}$. This value c is called the arithmetic-geometric mean³, of x_1 and y_1 , and is denoted by $\text{agm}(x_1, y_1)$.

We can also define Cauchy sequences in a metric space analogous to the situation in \mathbb{R} .

Definition 2.20. A sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of points in a metric space (X, d) is said to be a *Cauchy sequence* if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $n > N$, $d(a_n, a_m) < \epsilon$.

Lemma 2.21. *Every convergent sequence is Cauchy.*

Proof. The proof is the same, *mutatis mutandis*⁴, as the proof of Lemma 2.7. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence of points in X that converges to $L \in X$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $d(a_n, L) < \frac{\epsilon}{2}$. Thus for $n, m > N$, we have $d(a_n, a_m) \leq d(a_n, L) + d(L, a_m) < \frac{\epsilon}{2} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} = \epsilon$. So the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence. \square

Just as in \mathbb{R} , it would be useful to know if also in arbitrary metric spaces, the set of convergent sequences coincides with the set of Cauchy sequences. Unfortunately, this is not always true. For example, consider the metric space $X = (0, 1]$ with the same Euclidean metric as used in \mathbb{R} . Then the sequence $(1/n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is easily seen to be Cauchy, but is not convergent in X , as there is a missing point in X , namely 0. However, in some other metric spaces, such as \mathbb{R} , the set of convergent sequences and the set of Cauchy sequences do coincide. So it makes sense to give such metric spaces a special name: they are called “complete”.

Definition 2.22. A metric space in which every Cauchy sequence converges is called *complete*.

Example 2.23. \mathbb{R} with the Euclidean metric is complete. \diamond

Exercise 2.24. (*) Show that \mathbb{Q} with the Euclidean metric is not complete. *Hint:* Revisit the solution to part (6) of Exercise 1.35.

Exercise 2.25. Let X be a metric space. If $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in X which has a convergent subsequence $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ with limit L , then show that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with the same limit L .

Theorem 2.26. \mathbb{R}^d is complete.

Proof. (Essentially, this is because \mathbb{R} is complete, and one has d copies of \mathbb{R} in \mathbb{R}^d .) Suppose that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R}^d :

$$a_n = \begin{bmatrix} x_n^{(1)} \\ \vdots \\ x_n^{(d)} \end{bmatrix}.$$

³Gauss observed that $I(a, b) := \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x^2 + a^2)(y^2 + b^2)}}$ satisfies $I(a, b) = I\left(\frac{a+b}{2}, \sqrt{ab}\right)$ with the help of the substitution $t = \frac{1}{2}\left(x - \frac{ab}{x}\right)$, and using this, obtained the remarkable result that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x^2 + a^2)(y^2 + b^2)}} = \frac{\pi}{\text{agm}(a, b)}$.

⁴Latin phrase meaning “by changing those things which need to be changed”.

We have the inequalities

$$|x_n^{(k)} - x_m^{(k)}| \leq \|a_n - a_m\|_2 \quad (n, m \in \mathbb{N}, k = 1, \dots, d),$$

from which it follows that each of the sequences $(x_n^{(k)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, $k = 1, \dots, d$, is Cauchy in \mathbb{R} , and hence convergent, with respective limits, say $L^{(1)}, \dots, L^{(d)} \in \mathbb{R}$. So given $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a large enough N such that whenever $n > N$, we have

$$|x_n^{(k)} - L^{(k)}| < \frac{\epsilon}{\sqrt{d}} \quad (k = 1, \dots, d).$$

Set

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} L^{(1)} \\ \vdots \\ L^{(d)} \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^d.$$

Thus for $n > N$,

$$\|a_n - L\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^d |x_n^{(k)} - L^{(k)}|^2} < \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^d \frac{\epsilon^2}{d}} = \epsilon.$$

Consequently, the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to L . \square

Exercise 2.27. $\mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ with the metric induced by $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ is complete. (See Exercise 1.14 for the definition of the norm $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ on the vector space $\mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$.)

The following theorem is an important result, and lies at the core of a result on the existence of solutions for Ordinary Differential Equations (ODEs). You can learn more about this in the course Differential Equations (MA209). (See Exercise 1.15 for the definition of the norm $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ on $C[a, b]$.)

Theorem 2.28. (*) $C[a, b]$ with the metric induced by $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ is complete.

Proof. (You may skip this proof.) The idea behind the proof is similar to the proof of the completeness of \mathbb{R}^n . If $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence, then we think of the $f_n(x)$ as being the “components” of f_n indexed by $x \in [a, b]$. We first freeze an $x \in [a, b]$, and show that $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R} , and hence convergent to a number (which depends on x), and which we denote by $f(x)$. Next we show that the function $x \mapsto f(x)$ is continuous, and finally that $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does converge to f .

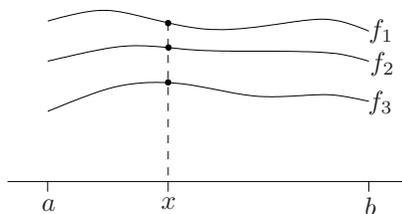


Figure 1. The Cauchy sequence $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ obtained from the Cauchy sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ by freezing x .

Let $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a Cauchy sequence. Let $x \in [a, b]$. We claim that $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R} . Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n, m > N$, $\|f_n - f_m\|_\infty < \epsilon$. But

$$|f_n(x) - f_m(x)| \leq \max_{y \in [a, b]} |f_n(y) - f_m(y)| = \|f_n - f_m\|_\infty < \epsilon,$$

for $n, m > N$. This shows that indeed $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R} . But \mathbb{R} is complete, and so the Cauchy sequence $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is in fact convergent, with a limit which depends on which

$x \in [a, b]$ we had frozen at the outset. To highlight this dependence on x , we denote the limit of $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ by $f(x)$. (Thus $f(a)$ is the number which is the limit of the convergent sequence $(f_n(a))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, $f(b)$ is the number which is the limit of the convergent sequence $(f_n(b))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, and so on.) So we have a function

x is sent to the number which is the limit of the convergent sequence $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$

from $[a, b]$ to \mathbb{R} . We call this function f . This will serve as the limit of the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$. But first we have to see if it belongs to $C[a, b]$, that is, we need to check that this f is continuous on $[a, b]$.

Let $x \in [a, b]$. We will show that f is continuous at x . Recall that in order to do this, we have to show that for each $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $|y - x| < \delta$, we have $|f(y) - f(x)| < \epsilon$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose N large enough so that for all $n, m > N$,

$$\|f_n - f_m\|_\infty < \frac{\epsilon}{3}.$$

Let $y \in [a, b]$. Then for $n > N$, $|f_n(y) - f_{N+1}(y)| \leq \|f_n - f_{N+1}\|_\infty < \frac{\epsilon}{3}$. Now let $n \rightarrow \infty$:

$$|f(y) - f_{N+1}(y)| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |f_n(y) - f_{N+1}(y)| \leq \frac{\epsilon}{3}.$$

As the choice of $y \in [a, b]$ was arbitrary, we have for all $y \in [a, b]$ that

$$|f(y) - f_{N+1}(y)| \leq \frac{\epsilon}{3}.$$

Now $f_{N+1} \in C[a, b]$. So there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $|y - x| < \delta$, we have

$$|f_{N+1}(y) - f_{N+1}(x)| < \frac{\epsilon}{3}.$$

Thus whenever $|y - x| < \delta$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |f(y) - f(x)| &= |f(y) - f_{N+1}(y) + f_{N+1}(y) - f_{N+1}(x) + f_{N+1}(x) - f(x)| \\ &\leq |f(y) - f_{N+1}(y)| + |f_{N+1}(y) - f_{N+1}(x)| + |f_{N+1}(x) - f(x)| \\ &\leq \epsilon/3 + \epsilon/3 + \epsilon/3 = \epsilon. \end{aligned}$$

This shows that f is continuous at x . As the choice of $x \in [a, b]$ was arbitrary, f is continuous on $[a, b]$.

Finally, we show that $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does converge to f . Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose N large enough so that for all $n, m > N$, $\|f_n - f_m\|_\infty < \epsilon$. Fix $n > N$. Let $x \in [a, b]$. Then for all $m > N$, $|f_n(x) - f_m(x)| \leq \|f_n - f_m\|_\infty < \epsilon$. Thus

$$|f_n(x) - f(x)| = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} |f_n(x) - f_m(x)| \leq \epsilon.$$

But $x \in [a, b]$ was arbitrary. Hence

$$\|f_n - f\|_\infty = \max_{x \in [a, b]} |f_n(x) - f(x)| \leq \epsilon.$$

But we could have fixed any $n > N$ at the outset and obtained the same result. So we have that for all $n > N$, $\|f_n - f\|_\infty \leq \epsilon$. Thus

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n = f,$$

and this completes the proof. \square

The norm $\|\cdot\|_\infty$ is special in that $C[a, b]$ is complete with the corresponding induced metric. It turns out that $C[a, b]$ with the other natural norm met earlier, namely the $\|\cdot\|_1$ -norm is not complete. The objective in the following exercise is to demonstrate this.

Exercise 2.29. (*) Let $C[0, 1]$ be equipped with the $\|\cdot\|_1$ -norm given by

$$\|f\|_1 := \int_0^1 |f(x)| dx \quad (f \in C[0, 1]).$$

Show that the corresponding metric space is not complete. For example, you may consider the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ with the f_n as shown in Figure 2. Show that

$$\|f_n - f_m\|_1 = \int_{\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2} + \max\{\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{m+1}\}} |f_n(x) - f_m(x)| dx \leq \frac{2}{N},$$

for $n, m > N$, and so $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy. Next, prove that if $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $f \in C[0, 1]$, then f must satisfy

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } x \in [0, \frac{1}{2}], \\ 1 & \text{for } x \in (\frac{1}{2}, 1], \end{cases}$$

which does not belong to $C[0, 1]$, a contradiction.

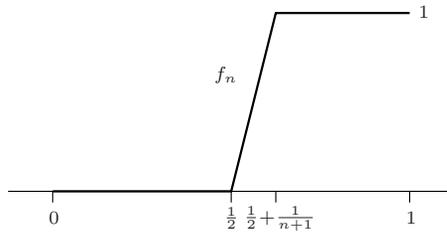


Figure 2. f_n .

Exercise 2.30. Show that any nonempty set X equipped with the discrete metric is complete.

Exercise 2.31. Prove that \mathbb{Z} equipped with the Euclidean metric induced from \mathbb{R} is complete.

2.3. Pointwise versus uniform convergence

Convergence in $(C[a, b], \|\cdot\|_\infty)$ is referred to as *uniform convergence*. More generally, we have the following definition.

Definition 2.32. Let X be any set and $f, f_n : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) be functions.

(1) The sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is said to *converge uniformly to f* if

$$\forall \epsilon > 0, \exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n > N, \forall x \in X, |f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon.$$

(2) The sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is said to *converge pointwise to f* if

$$\forall \epsilon > 0, \forall x \in X, \exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n > N, |f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon.$$

Consider the two statements:

$$\forall \epsilon > 0, \exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n > N, \forall x \in X, |f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon.$$

and

$$\forall \epsilon > 0, \forall x \in X, \exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n > N, |f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon.$$

Can you spot the difference? What has changed is the order of

$$\boxed{\forall x \in X}$$

and

$$\boxed{\exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n > N.}$$

This seemingly small change makes a world of difference. Indeed, even in everyday language, the two statements:

There exists a faculty member B such that for every student A , B is a personal tutor of A .

and

For every student A , there exists a faculty member B such that B is a personal tutor of A .

clearly mean two quite different things, where the former says that the faculty member B is personal tutor to *all* students, while in the latter statement, the faculty member who is claimed to exist may *depend on* which student A is chosen.

This is the same sort of a difference between the uniform convergence requirement, namely:

$$\forall \epsilon > 0, \exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n > N, \forall x \in X, |f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon.$$

and the pointwise convergence requirement, namely

$$\forall \epsilon > 0, \forall x \in X, \exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n > N, |f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon.$$

In the former, the same N works for all $x \in X$, while in the latter, the N might depend on the x in question.

It is clear that if f_n converges uniformly to f , then f_n converges pointwise to f , but there are pointwise convergent sequences of functions which do not converge uniformly. Here is an example to illustrate this.

Example 2.33. Consider $f_n : (0, 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) given by $f_n(x) = x^n$ ($x \in (0, 1)$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$). Then $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges pointwise to the zero function f , defined by $f(x) = 0$ ($x \in (0, 1)$). Indeed, for each $x \in (0, 1)$,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x^n = 0,$$

and so the following statement is true:

$$\forall \epsilon > 0, \forall x \in (0, 1), \exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n > N, |f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon.$$

If fact, we can choose $N > \frac{\log \epsilon}{\log x}$ so that $x^N < \epsilon$, and if we have $n > N$, we are guaranteed that

$$|f_n(x) - f(x)| = |x^n - 0| = x^n < x^N < \epsilon.$$

It is clear that our choice of N in the above depends not only on ϵ , but also on the point $x \in (0, 1)$. The closer x is to 1, the larger N is. The question arises: Is there an N so that for $n > N$, $|f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon$ for *all* $x \in (0, 1)$? We will show below that the answer is “no”. In other words, $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not converge uniformly to the zero function f .

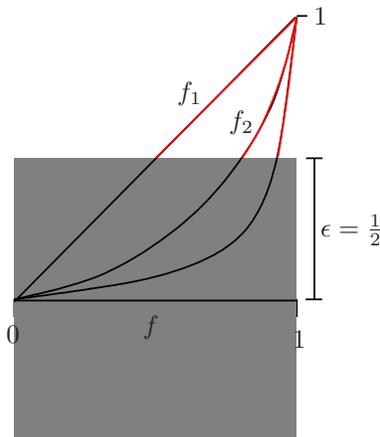


Figure 3. $(x^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges pointwise, but not uniformly, to the zero function on $(0, 1)$.

For example, let $\epsilon = 1/2 > 0$. Let us suppose that there does exist an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$,

$$\forall x \in (0, 1), |f_n(x) - f(x)| = x^n < \frac{1}{2} = \epsilon.$$

In particular, we would have $\forall x \in (0, 1), x^{N+1} < \frac{1}{2}$. Take $x = 1 - \frac{1}{m}, m \in \mathbb{N}, m \geq 2$. Then

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{m}\right)^{N+1} < \frac{1}{2}.$$

Letting $m \rightarrow \infty$, we obtain $1 \leq \frac{1}{2}$, a contradiction.

See Figure 3, which explains this visually. If $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ were to converge to the zero function uniformly, then in particular, for all n large enough, the graph of f_n would lie in a strip of width $\epsilon = 1/2$ around the graph of the zero function. But no matter how large an n we take, some part of the graph of f_n always falls outside the strip. \diamond

To test whether a sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is uniformly convergent, first find its pointwise limit (if it exists), and then check to see whether the convergence is uniform.

Exercise 2.34. Suppose that X be a set and $f_n : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) be a sequence which is pointwise convergent to $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Let the numbers $a_n := \sup\{|f_n(x) - f(x)| : x \in X\}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) all exist. Prove that $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly to f if and only if $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$.

Let $f_n : (0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by $f_n(x) = xe^{-nx}$ for $x \in (0, \infty)$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Show that the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly on $(0, \infty)$.

Exercise 2.35. Let $f_n : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by

$$f_n(x) = \frac{x}{1 + nx} \quad (x \in [0, 1]).$$

Does $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converge uniformly on $[0, 1]$?

Exercise 2.36. Let $f_n : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by

$$f_n(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{(1 + x^2)^n} \quad (x \in \mathbb{R}, n \in \mathbb{N}).$$

Show that the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of continuous functions converges pointwise to the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \neq 0, \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0, \end{cases}$$

which is discontinuous at 0.

Uniform convergence often implies that the limit function inherits properties possessed by the terms of the sequence. For instance, we will see later on that if a sequence of continuous functions converges uniformly to a function f , then f is also continuous; see Proposition 4.15. Morally, the reason nice things can happen with uniform convergence is that we can exchange two limiting processes, which is not allowed always when one just has pointwise convergence. The following exercises demonstrate the precariousness of exchanging limiting processes arbitrarily.

Exercise 2.37. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $m \in \mathbb{N}$, set $a_{m,n} = \frac{m}{m+n}$.

Show that for each fixed n , $\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} a_{m,n} = 1$, while for each fixed m , $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_{m,n} = 0$.

Is $\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_{m,n} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} a_{m,n}$?

Exercise 2.38. Let $f_n : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by

$$f_n(x) = \frac{\sin(nx)}{\sqrt{n}} \quad (x \in \mathbb{R}, n \in \mathbb{N}).$$

Show that $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges pointwise to the zero function f . However, show that $(f'_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not converge pointwise to (the zero function) f' .

Exercise 2.39. Let $f_n : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) be defined by $f_n(x) = nx(1 - x^2)^n$ ($x \in [0, 1]$). Show that $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges pointwise to the zero function f . However, show that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^1 f_n(x) dx = \frac{1}{2} \neq 0 = \int_0^1 \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(x) dx.$$

2.4. Convergent sequences and closed sets

We have learnt that closed sets are ones whose complement is open. Here is another characterization of closed sets.

Theorem 2.40. *A set F is closed if and only if for every convergent sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $a_n \in F$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), we have that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n \in F$.*

Proof. Suppose that F is closed. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a convergent sequence such that $a_n \in F$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) and denote its limit by L . Assume that $L \notin F$. Then $L \in \mathcal{C}F$, the complement of F , which is open. So there exists an $r > 0$ such that the open ball $B(L, r)$ with center L and radius $r > 0$ is contained in $\mathcal{C}F$, that is, $B(L, r)$ contains no points from F . But as $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit L , we can choose a large enough n so that $d(a_n, L) < r/2$. This implies that $a_n \in B(L, r)$. But also $a_n \in F$, and so we have arrived at a contradiction. See Figure 4. This shows the “only if” part.

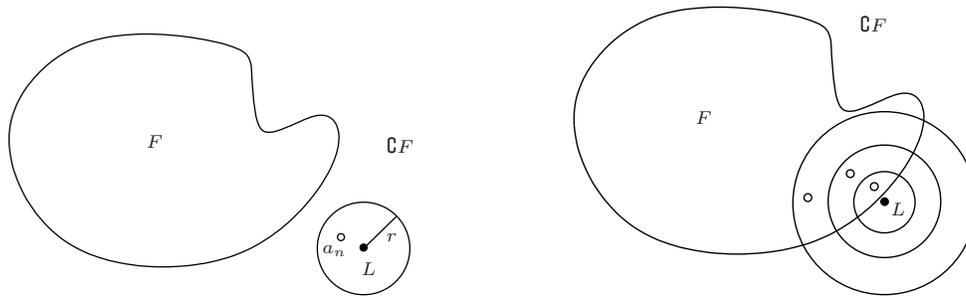


Figure 4. Proof of the theorem on the characterization of closed sets in terms of convergent sequences. The figure on the left is the one for the “only if” part, and the one on the right is for the “if” part.

Now suppose that the set is not closed. Then its complement $\mathcal{C}F$ is not open. This means that there is a point $L \in \mathcal{C}F$ such that for every $r > 0$, the open ball $B(L, r)$ has at least one point from F . Now take successively $r = 1/n$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), and choose a point $a_n \in F \cap B(L, 1/n)$. In this manner we obtain a sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $a_n \in F$ for each n , and $d(a_n, L) < 1/n$. The property $d(a_n, L) < 1/n$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) implies that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a convergent sequence with limit L . So we have obtained the existence of a convergent sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $a_n \in F$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), but

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = L \notin F.$$

See Figure 4. This completes the proof of the “if” part. \square

Exercise 2.41.

- (1) Let $0 \neq a \in \mathbb{R}^d$ and $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$. Show that the “hyperplane” $H = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d : a^\top x = \beta\}$ is closed in \mathbb{R}^d .
- (2) Prove that if $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ and $b \in \mathbb{R}^m$, then the set of solutions $S = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : Ax = b\}$ is a closed subset of \mathbb{R}^n .
- (3) Show that the “Linear Programming simplex” $\Sigma := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : Ax = b, x_1 \geq 0, \dots, x_n \geq 0\}$ is closed in \mathbb{R}^n .

Exercise 2.42. Let S be an open set and $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ a sequence in a metric space. Show that if (x_n) converges to $x \in S$, then there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$, $x_n \in S$. (In words: if the limit of a convergent sequence lies in an open set, then the sequence eventually stays in the open set.)

2.5. Compact sets

In this section, we study an important class of subsets of a metric space, called compact sets. Before we learn the definition, let us give some motivation for this concept.

Of the different types of intervals in \mathbb{R} , perhaps the most important are those of the form $[a, b]$, where a, b are finite real numbers. Why are such intervals so important? This is not an easy question to answer, but we already know of one vital result, namely the Extreme Value Theorem, where such intervals play a vital role. Recall that the Extreme Value Theorem asserts that any continuous function $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ attains a maximum and a minimum value on $[a, b]$. This result does not hold in general for continuous functions $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ with $I = (a, b)$ or $I = [a, b)$ or $I = (a, \infty)$, and so on. Besides its theoretical importance in Analysis, the Extreme Value Theorem is also a fundamental result in Optimization Theory. It turns out that when we want to generalize this result, the notion of “compact sets” is pertinent, and we will learn (later on in Chapter 4) the following analogue of the Extreme Value Theorem: If K is a compact subset of a metric space X and $f : K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous, then f assumes a maximum and a minimum on K .

Here is the definition of a compact set.

Definition 2.43. Let (X, d) be a metric space. A subset K of X is said to be *compact* if every sequence in K has a convergent subsequence with limit in K , that is, if $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a sequence such that $x_n \in K$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, then there exists a subsequence $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ which converges to some $L \in K$.

Example 2.44. The interval $[a, b]$ is a compact subset of \mathbb{R} . Indeed, every sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ contained in $[a, b]$ is bounded, and by the Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem possesses a convergent subsequence, say $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$, with limit L . But since

$$a \leq a_{n_k} \leq b,$$

by letting $k \rightarrow \infty$, we obtain $a \leq L \leq b$, that is, $L \in [a, b]$. Hence $[a, b]$ is compact.

On the other hand, (a, b) is not compact, since the sequence

$$\left(a + \frac{b-a}{2n} \right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$$

is contained in (a, b) , but it has no convergent subsequence whose limit belongs to (a, b) . Indeed this is because the sequence is convergent, with limit a , and so every subsequence of this sequence is also convergent with limit a , which doesn't belong to (a, b) .

\mathbb{R} is not compact since the sequence $(n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ cannot have a convergent subsequence. Indeed, if such a convergent subsequence existed, it would also be Cauchy, but the distance between any two distinct terms, being distinct integers, is at least 1, contradicting the Cauchyness. \diamond

In the above list of nonexamples, note that $\mathbb{R} = (-\infty, \infty)$ is not bounded, and that (a, b) is not closed. On the other hand, the example $[a, b]$ is both bounded and closed. It turns out that compact sets are always closed and bounded. First we define exactly what we mean by a bounded subset of a metric space.

Definition 2.45. A subset S of a metric space X is said to be *bounded* if there exists an $M > 0$ such that for all $x, y \in S$, $d(x, y) \leq M$.

Exercise 2.46. Let (X, d) be a metric space and let $x_0 \in X$. Show that a subset $S \subseteq X$ is bounded if and only if there exists an $R > 0$ such that for all $x \in S$, $d(x, x_0) \leq R$.

Hint: Note that x_0 is not necessarily an element of S . Use the triangle inequality.

Theorem 2.47. Any compact subset K of a metric space (X, d) is closed and bounded.

Proof. We first show that K is closed. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in K that converges to L . Then there is a convergent subsequence, say $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ that is convergent to a limit $L' \in K$. But as $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a subsequence of a convergent sequence with limit L , it is also convergent to L . By the uniqueness of limits, $L = L' \in K$. Thus, K is closed.

Next we show that K is bounded. Let $x_0 \in X$. Suppose K is not bounded. Then given any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we can find an $a_n \in K$ such that $d(a_n, x_0) > n$. But this implies that no subsequence of $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded. So no subsequence of $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ can be convergent either. This contradicts the compactness of K . Thus our assumption was incorrect, that is, K is bounded. \square

The converse of the above theorem is, in general, false. That is, there exist metric spaces with subsets that are closed and bounded, but not compact, as shown by the following example. (However, as shown by Theorem 2.49 below, the converse is true for subsets of \mathbb{R}^n).

Example 2.48. Consider the unit ball with center 0 in the normed space ℓ^2 :

$$\mathbb{B} = \{x \in \ell^2 : \|x\|_2 \leq 1\}.$$

(See Exercise 1.19 for the definition of ℓ_2 .) Then \mathbb{B} is bounded, it is closed (since its complement is easily seen to be open), but \mathbb{B} is not compact, and this can be demonstrated as follows. Take the sequence $(e_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, where e_n is the sequence with only the n th term equal to 1, and all other terms are equal to 0:

$$e_n := (0, \dots, 0, \underbrace{1}_{n\text{th place}}, 0, \dots) \in \mathbb{B} \subseteq \ell^2$$

Then this sequence $(e_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in $\mathbb{B} \subseteq \ell^2$ can have no convergent subsequence. Indeed, whenever $n \neq m$, $\|e_n - e_m\|_2 = \sqrt{2}$, and so no subsequence of $(e_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ can be Cauchy, much less convergent! \diamond

We will now show the following important result.

Theorem 2.49. A subset K of \mathbb{R}^d is compact if and only if K is closed and bounded.

Before showing this, we prove a technical result, which besides being interesting on its own, will also somewhat simplify the proof of the above theorem.

Lemma 2.50. Every bounded sequence in \mathbb{R}^d has convergent subsequence.

Proof. We prove this using induction on d . Let us consider the case when $d = 1$. Then the statement is precisely the Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem!

Now suppose that the result has been proved in \mathbb{R}^d for some $d \geq 1$. We will show that it holds in \mathbb{R}^{d+1} . Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a bounded sequence. We split each a_n into its first d components and its last component in \mathbb{R} :

$$a_n = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_n \\ \beta_n \end{bmatrix},$$

where $\alpha_n \in \mathbb{R}^d$ and $\beta_n \in \mathbb{R}$. Clearly $\|\alpha_n\|_2 \leq \|a_n\|_2$, and so $(\alpha_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a bounded sequence in \mathbb{R}^d . By the induction hypothesis, it has a convergent subsequence, say $(\alpha_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ which converges to, say $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}^d$. Consider now the sequence $(\beta_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ in \mathbb{R} . Then $(\beta_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded, and so by the

Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem, it has a convergent subsequence $(\beta_{n_{k_\ell}})_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}}$, with limit β , say $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$. Then we have

$$a_{n_{k_\ell}} = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{n_{k_\ell}} \\ \beta_{n_{k_\ell}} \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{\ell \rightarrow \infty} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha \\ \beta \end{bmatrix} =: L \in \mathbb{R}^{d+1}.$$

Thus the bounded sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ has $(a_{n_{k_\ell}})_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}}$ as a convergent subsequence. \square

Now we return to the task of proving of Theorem 2.49.

Proof. (“If” part.) Let K be closed and bounded. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in K . Then $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded, and so it has a convergent subsequence, with limit L . But since K is closed and since each term of the sequence belongs to K , it follows that also $L \in K$. Consequently, K is compact.

(“Only if” part) This follows by Theorem 2.47. \square

Example 2.51. The intervals (a, b) , $[a, b)$ are not compact, since although they are bounded, they are not closed.

The intervals $(-\infty, b]$, $[a, \infty)$ are not compact, since although they are closed, they are not bounded. \diamond

Let us consider an interesting compact subset of the real line, called the *Cantor set*.

Example 2.52 (Cantor set). The Cantor set is constructed as follows. First, denote the closed interval $[0, 1]$ by F_1 . Next, delete from F_1 the open interval $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$ which is its middle third, and denote the remaining closed set by F_2 . Clearly, $F_2 = [0, \frac{1}{3}] \cup [\frac{2}{3}, 1]$. Next, delete from F_2 the open intervals $(\frac{1}{9}, \frac{2}{9})$ and $(\frac{7}{9}, \frac{8}{9})$, which are the middle thirds of its two pieces, and denote the remaining closed set by F_3 . It is easy to see that $F_3 = [0, \frac{1}{9}] \cup [\frac{2}{9}, \frac{1}{3}] \cup [\frac{2}{3}, \frac{7}{9}] \cup [\frac{8}{9}, 1]$. If we continue this process, at each stage deleting the open middle third of each closed interval remaining from the previous stage, we obtain a sequence of closed sets F_n , each of which contains all of its successors. Figure 5 illustrates this.



Figure 5. Construction of the Cantor set.

The Cantor set is defined by $F = \bigcap_{n=1}^{\infty} F_n$.

As F is an intersection of closed sets, it is closed. Moreover it is contained in $[0, 1]$ and so it is also bounded. Consequently it is compact. F consists of those points in the closed interval $[0, 1]$ which “ultimately remain” after the removal of all the open intervals $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3})$, $(\frac{1}{9}, \frac{2}{9})$, $(\frac{7}{9}, \frac{8}{9})$, \dots . What points do remain? F clearly contains the end-points of the closed intervals which make up each set F_n :

$$0, 1, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{9}, \frac{2}{9}, \frac{7}{9}, \frac{8}{9}, \dots$$

Does F contain any other points? Actually, F contains many more points than the above list of end points. After all, the above list of endpoints is countable, but it can be shown that F is

uncountable! It turns out that the Cantor set is a very intricate mathematical object, and is often a source of interesting examples/counterexamples in Analysis. (For example, as the sum of the lengths of the intervals removed is

$$\frac{1}{3} + 2\frac{1}{3^2} + 4\frac{1}{3^3} + \cdots = 1,$$

(factor out $1/3$ and sum the resulting geometric series), the “(Lebesgue length) measure” of F is $1 - 1 = 0$. So this is an example of an uncountable set with “Lebesgue measure” 0.) \diamond

Exercise 2.53. Determine if the following statements are true or false. Give reasons for your answers.

- (1) If a set $S \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ is such that each convergent sequence in S has a convergent subsequence with limit in S , then S is compact.
- (2) All closed and bounded sets are compact.
- (3) If (Y, d) is a metric space with subset X , and K is a compact subset of X , then K is a compact subset of Y .

Exercise 2.54. Let K be a compact subset of \mathbb{R}^d . Let F be a closed subset of \mathbb{R}^d . Show that $F \cap K$ is compact.

Exercise 2.55. Show that the unit sphere with center 0 in \mathbb{R}^d , namely

$$\mathbb{S}^{d-1} := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d : \|x\|_2 = 1\}$$

is compact.

Exercise 2.56. Show that $\{1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \dots\} \cup \{0\}$ is compact.

Exercise 2.57. (*) Consider the metric space $(\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}, \|\cdot\|_\infty)$. Is the subset (the “General Linear” group⁵) $GL(m, \mathbb{R}) = \{A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} : A \text{ is invertible}\}$ compact?

What about the set of orthogonal matrices $O(m, \mathbb{R}) = \{A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m} : AA^T = I_m\}$?

Exercise 2.58. Consider the subset $H := \{(x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x_1 x_2 = 1\}$ of \mathbb{R}^2 . Show that H is not compact, but H is closed.

2.6. Notes (not part of the course)

Definition of compactness. The notion of a compact set that we have defined is really *sequential* compactness. In the context of the more general topological spaces, one defines the notion of compactness as follows.

Definition 2.59. Let X be a topological space with the topology given by the family of open sets \mathcal{O} . Let $Y \subseteq X$. A collection $\mathcal{C} = \{U_i : i \in I\}$ of open sets is said to be an *open cover* of Y if

$$Y \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i.$$

$K \subseteq X$ is said to be a *compact set* if every open cover of K has a finite subcover, that is, given any open cover $\mathcal{C} = \{U_i : i \in I\}$ of K , there exist finitely many indices $i_1, \dots, i_n \in I$ such that

$$K \subseteq U_{i_1} \cup \cdots \cup U_{i_n}.$$

In the case of *metric spaces*, it can be shown that the set of compact sets *coincides* with the set of sequentially compact sets. But in general topological spaces, these may not be the same.

⁵The General Linear group is so named because the columns of an invertible matrix are linearly independent, hence the vectors they define are in “general position” (linearly independent!), and matrices in the general linear group take points in general position to points in general position.

Uniform convergence, termwise differentiation and integration. Besides Proposition 4.15, one also has the following results associated with uniform convergence.

Proposition 2.60. *If $f_n : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) is a sequence of Riemann-integrable functions on $[a, b]$ which converges uniformly to $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, then f is also Riemann-integrable on $[a, b]$, and moreover*

$$\int_a^b f(x)dx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_a^b f_n(x)dx.$$

Proposition 2.61. *Let $f_n : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) be a sequence of differentiable functions on (a, b) , such that there exists a point $c \in (a, b)$ for which $(f_n(c))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges. If the sequence $(f'_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly to g on (a, b) , then $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly to a differentiable function f on (a, b) , and moreover, $f'(x) = g(x)$ for all $x \in (a, b)$.*

We will see a proof of this last result later on when we study differentiation in Chapter 5.

Chapter 3

Series

In this chapter we study series in normed spaces, but first we will begin with series in \mathbb{R} .

3.1. Series in \mathbb{R}

Given a sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, one can form a new sequence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of its *partial sums*:

$$\begin{aligned} s_1 &:= a_1, \\ s_2 &:= a_1 + a_2, \\ s_3 &:= a_1 + a_2 + a_3, \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

Definition 3.1. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence and let $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be the sequence of its partial sums. If $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges, we say that the *series* $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ *converges*, and we write $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n$.

If the sequence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not converge we say that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ *diverges*.

Example 3.2. The series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n$ diverges. Indeed the sequence of partial sums is the sequence $-1, 0, -1, 0, \dots$ which is a divergent sequence.

The series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+1)}$ converges. Its n th partial sum “telescopes”:

$$s_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{k(k+1)} = \sum_{k=1}^n \left(\frac{1}{k} - \frac{1}{k+1} \right) = \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} \right) + \dots + \left(\frac{1}{n} - \frac{1}{n+1} \right) = 1 - \frac{1}{n+1}.$$

Since $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n = 1 - 0 = 1$, we have $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+1)} = 1$. ◇

Exercise 3.3 (Tantalising \tan^{-1}). Show that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2n^2} = \frac{\pi}{4}$.

Hint: Write $\frac{1}{2n^2} = \frac{(2n+1) - (2n-1)}{1 + (2n+1)(2n-1)}$ and use $\tan(a-b) = \frac{\tan a - \tan b}{1 + \tan a \tan b}$.

Exercise 3.4. Show that for every real number $x > 1$, the series

$$\frac{1}{1+x} + \frac{2}{1+x^2} + \frac{4}{1+x^4} + \dots + \frac{2^n}{1+x^{2^n}} + \dots$$

converges. *Hint:* Add $\frac{1}{1-x}$.

Exercise 3.5. Consider the Fibonacci sequence $(F_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ with $F_0 = F_1 = 1$ and $F_{n+1} = F_n + F_{n-1}$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Show that

$$\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F_{n-1}F_{n+1}} = 1.$$

Note that in the above example of the divergent series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n$, the sequence

$$(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = ((-1)^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$$

was not convergent. In fact, we have the following necessary condition for convergence of a series.

Proposition 3.6. *If the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges, then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$.*

Proof. Let $s_n := a_1 + \cdots + a_n$. Since the series converges we have

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n = L$$

for some $L \in \mathbb{R}$. But as $(s_{n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a subsequence of $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, it follows that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_{n+1} = L.$$

By the algebra of limits, $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_{n+1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (s_{n+1} - s_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_{n+1} - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n = L - L = 0$. \square

Exercise 3.7. Does the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos\left(\frac{1}{n}\right)$ converge?

In Theorem 3.9, we will see an instance of a series which shows that although this condition is *necessary* for the convergence of a series, it is not *sufficient*. But first, let us see an important example of a convergent series. In fact, it lies at the core of most of the convergence results in Real Analysis.

Theorem 3.8. *Let $r \in \mathbb{R}$. The geometric series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} r^n$ converges if and only if $|r| < 1$.*

Proof. Let $|r| < 1$. First we will observe that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} r^n = 0$. As $|r| < 1$,

$$|r| = \frac{1}{1+h}$$

for some $h > 0$. (Just take $h = 1/|r| - 1$.) Then $(1+h)^n = 1 + \binom{n}{1}h + \cdots + h^n > nh$. Thus

$$0 \leq |r|^n = \frac{1}{(1+h)^n} < \frac{1}{nh},$$

and so by the Sandwich Theorem, $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |r|^n = 0$. As $-|r|^n \leq r^n \leq |r|^n$, it follows again from the Sandwich Theorem that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} r^n = 0.$$

Let $s_n := 1 + r + r^2 + \cdots + r^n$. Then $rs_n = r + r^2 + \cdots + r^n + r^{n+1}$, and so

$$(1-r)s_n = s_n - rs_n = 1 - r^{n+1}.$$

As $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} r^{n+1} = 0$, it follows that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (1-r)s_n = 1$. Hence $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n = \frac{1}{1-r}$.

Now suppose that $|r| \geq 1$. If $r = 1$, then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} r^n = 1 \neq 0,$$

and so by Proposition 3.6, the series diverges. Similarly if $r = -1$, then $(r^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = ((-1)^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ diverges, and so the series is divergent. Also if $|r| > 1$, then the sequence $(r^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ has the subsequence $(r^{2n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ which is not bounded, and hence not convergent. Consequently $(r^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ diverges, and hence the series diverges. \square

Theorem 3.9. *The harmonic series¹ $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$ diverges.*

Proof. Let $s_n := 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n}$. We have

$$s_{2n} - s_n = \frac{1}{n+1} + \frac{1}{n+2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2n} \geq n \frac{1}{2n} = \frac{1}{2}. \quad (3.1)$$

If the series converges, then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n = L$ for some L . But then also $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_{2n} = L$, and so

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (s_{2n} - s_n) = L - L = 0,$$

which contradicts (3.1). \square



Note that the n th term of the above series satisfies

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0,$$

showing that the condition given in Proposition 3.6 is necessary but not sufficient for the convergence of the series.

Theorem 3.10. *Let $s \in \mathbb{R}$. The series² $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^s}$ converges if and only if $s > 1$.*

Proof. Let

$$S_n = 1 + \frac{1}{2^s} + \frac{1}{3^s} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^s}.$$

Clearly $S_1 \leq S_2 \leq S_3 \leq \dots$, so that $(S_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is an increasing sequence.

Let $s > 1$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} S_{2n+1} &= 1 + \left(\frac{1}{2^s} + \frac{1}{4^s} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2n)^s} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{3^s} + \frac{1}{5^s} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2n+1)^s} \right) \\ &< 1 + 2 \left(\frac{1}{2^s} + \frac{1}{4^s} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2n)^s} \right) \\ &= 1 + \frac{2}{2^s} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2^s} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^s} \right) \\ &= 1 + 2^{1-s} S_n \\ &< 1 + 2^{1-s} S_{2n+1}. \end{aligned}$$

¹Its name derives from the concept of overtones, or harmonics in music: the wavelengths of the overtones of a vibrating string are $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, and so on, of the string's fundamental wavelength.

²The function $s \mapsto \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^s}$ is called the *Riemann-zeta function*, which is an important function in number theory; the connection with number theory is brought out by Euler's identity, which says that $\zeta(s) := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^s} = \prod_{p \text{ prime}} \frac{1}{1-p^{-s}}$.

As $2^{1-s} < 1$ (because $s > 1$!), this last inequality yields

$$S_{2n+1} < \frac{1}{1 - 2^{1-s}} \quad (n \in \mathbb{N})$$

and

$$S_{2n} < S_{2n+1} < \frac{1}{1 - 2^{1-s}} \quad (n \in \mathbb{N})$$

So $(S_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded. But we know that an increasing sequence which is bounded above is convergent (to the supremum of its terms). Thus

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^s}$$

converges for $s > 1$.

If on the other hand $s \leq 1$, the proof is similar to that of showing that the harmonic series diverges. Indeed, if the series converged, then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (S_{2n} - S_n) = 0,$$

while on the other hand,

$$S_{2n} - S_n = \frac{1}{(n+1)^s} + \frac{1}{(n+2)^s} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(2n)^s} \geq n \frac{1}{(2n)^s} \geq n \frac{1}{2n} = \frac{1}{2},$$

where we have used the fact that $s \leq 1$ in order to obtain the last inequality. \square

For a sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ with nonnegative terms, we sometimes write

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n < +\infty$$

to mean the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges.

Exercise 3.11. (*) Prove that if $a_1 \geq a_2 \geq a_3 \dots$ is a sequence of nonnegative numbers, and if

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n < +\infty,$$

then a_n approaches 0 faster than $1/n$, that is, $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n a_n = 0$.

Hint: Consider the inequalities $a_{n+1} + \cdots + a_{2n} \geq n \cdot a_{2n}$ and $a_{n+1} + \cdots + a_{2n+1} \geq n \cdot a_{2n+1}$.

Show that the assumption $a_1 \geq a_2 \geq a_3 \dots$ above cannot be dropped by considering the *lacunary series* whose n^2 th term is $1/n^2$ and all other terms are zero.

Proposition 3.12. If $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges.

Proof. Let $s_n := a_1 + \cdots + a_n$. We will show that $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence. We have for $n > m$:

$$\begin{aligned} |s_n - s_m| &= |(a_1 + \cdots + a_n) - (a_1 + \cdots + a_m)| = |a_{m+1} + \cdots + a_n| \\ &\leq |a_{m+1}| + \cdots + |a_n| = (|a_1| + \cdots + |a_n|) - (|a_1| + \cdots + |a_m|) = \sigma_n - \sigma_m, \end{aligned}$$

where $\sigma_k := |a_1| + \cdots + |a_k|$ ($k \in \mathbb{N}$). Since

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n| < +\infty,$$

its sequence of partial sums $(\sigma_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent, and in particular, Cauchy. This shows, in light of the above inequality $|s_n - s_m| \leq \sigma_n - \sigma_m$, that $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R} and hence it is convergent. \square

Definition 3.13. If the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges, then we say that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges absolutely.

Exercise 3.14. Does the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin n}{n^2}$ converge?

Example 3.15. The series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n}$ does not converge absolutely, since

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left| \frac{(-1)^n}{n} \right| = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n},$$

and we have seen that the harmonic series diverges.

A series of the form

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n a_n$$

with $a_n \geq 0$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ is called an *alternating series*. We note that the series considered above, namely

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n}$$

is an alternating series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n a_n$ with $a_n := \frac{1}{n}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$).

We will now learn a result below, called the Leibniz Alternating Series Theorem, will enable us to conclude that in fact this alternating series is in fact convergent (since the sufficiency conditions for convergence in the Leibniz Alternating Series Theorem are satisfied:

$$a_1 = 1 \geq a_2 = \frac{1}{2} \geq a_3 = \frac{1}{3} \geq \dots$$

and $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0$). ◇

Theorem 3.16 (Leibniz Alternating Series Theorem). *Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence such that*

- (1) *it has nonnegative terms ($a_n \geq 0$ for all n),*
- (2) *it is decreasing ($a_1 \geq a_2 \geq a_3 \geq \dots$), and*
- (3) $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$.

Then the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n a_n$ converges.

A pictorial “proof without words” is shown in Figure 1. The sum of the lengths of the disjoint dark intervals is at most the length of $(0, a_1)$.

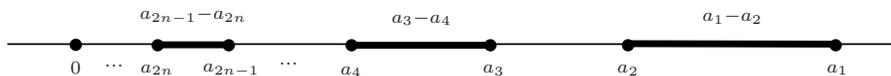


Figure 1. Pictorial proof of the Leibniz Alternating Series Theorem.

Proof. We may just as well prove the convergence of $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} a_n$ $\left(= - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n a_n \right)$.

Let $s_n = a_1 - a_2 + a_3 - + \cdots + (-1)^{n-1} a_n$. Clearly

$$\begin{aligned} s_{2n+1} &= s_{2n-1} - a_{2n} + a_{2n+1} \leq s_{2n-1}, \\ s_{2n+2} &= s_{2n} + a_{2n+1} - a_{2n+2} \geq s_{2n}, \end{aligned}$$

and so the sequence s_2, s_4, s_6, \dots is increasing, while the sequence s_3, s_5, s_7, \dots is decreasing. Also,

$$s_{2n} \leq s_{2n} + a_{2n+1} = s_{2n+1} \leq s_{2n-1} \leq \cdots \leq s_3.$$

So $(s_{2n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a bounded ($s_2 \leq s_{2n} \leq s_3$ for all n), increasing sequence, and hence it is convergent. But as $(a_{2n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is also convergent with limit 0, it follows that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_{2n+1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (s_{2n} + a_{2n+1}) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_{2n}.$$

Hence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent, and so the series converges. \square

Exercise 3.17. Let $s > 0$. Show that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^s}$ converges.

Exercise 3.18. Prove that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{\sqrt{n}}{n+1}$ converges.

Exercise 3.19. Prove that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \sin \frac{1}{n}$ converges.

3.1.1. Comparison, Ratio, Root. We will now learn three important tests for the convergence of a series:

- (1) the comparison test (where we compare with a series whose convergence status is known)
- (2) the ratio test (where we look at the behaviour of the ratio of terms a_{n+1}/a_n)
- (3) the root test (where we look at the behaviour of $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|}$)

Theorem 3.20 (Comparison test).

- (1) If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(c_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are such that there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|a_n| \leq c_n$ for all $n \geq N$, and $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n$ converges, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges absolutely.
- (2) If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(d_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are such that there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $a_n \geq d_n \geq 0$ for all $n \geq N$, and $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} d_n$ diverges, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ diverges.

Proof. Let

$$\begin{aligned} s_n &:= |a_1| + \cdots + |a_n| \\ \sigma_n &:= c_1 + \cdots + c_n. \end{aligned}$$

We have for $n > m$

$$|s_n - s_m| = |a_{m+1}| + \cdots + |a_n| \leq c_{m+1} + \cdots + c_n = |\sigma_n - \sigma_m|,$$

and since $(\sigma_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy, $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is also Cauchy. Hence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is absolutely convergent.

The second claim follows from the first one. For if $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges, so must $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} d_n$. \square

Theorem 3.21 (Ratio test). *Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence of nonzero terms.*

- (1) *If $\exists r \in (0, 1)$ and $\exists N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\forall n > N$, $\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| \leq r$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges absolutely.*
- (2) *If $\exists N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\forall n > N$, $\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| \geq 1$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ diverges.*

Proof. (1) We have

$$\begin{aligned} |a_{N+1}| &\leq r|a_N|, \\ |a_{N+2}| &\leq r|a_{N+1}| \leq r^2|a_N|, \\ |a_{N+3}| &\leq r|a_{N+2}| \leq r^3|a_N|, \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

Since the geometric series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} r^n$ converges, we obtain

$$\sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} |a_n| < +\infty$$

by the Comparison Test. By adding the finitely sum $|a_1| + \cdots + |a_N|$ to each partial sum of this last series, we see also that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges. This completes the proof of the claim in (1).

(2) The given condition implies that

$$\cdots \geq |a_{N+3}| \geq |a_{N+2}| \geq |a_{N+1}|, \quad (3.2)$$

If the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ was convergent, then $0 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} a_{N+k}$. Hence $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} |a_{N+k}| = 0$ as well. But by the (3.2), we see that $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} |a_{N+k}| \geq |a_{N+1}| > 0$, a contradiction. \square



It does not suffice for convergence of the series that for all sufficiently large n , $\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| < 1$.

For example, for the harmonic series $\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = \left| \frac{\frac{1}{n+1}}{\frac{1}{n}} \right| = \frac{n}{n+1} < 1$, but $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$ diverges.

Corollary 3.22. *Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ have nonzero terms. If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| < 1$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges absolutely.*

Proof. Let $L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right|$. Then $\epsilon := \frac{1-L}{2} > 0$. Choose $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for $n > N$,

$$\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| - L \leq \left| \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| - L \right| < \epsilon = \frac{1-L}{2},$$

and so $\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| < \frac{1+L}{2} =: r < \frac{1+1}{2} = 1$. Then we use (1) from Theorem 3.21. \square

Example 3.23 (The exponential series). Let $a \in \mathbb{R}$. The series $e^a := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} a^n$ converges.

If $a = 0$, clearly $e^a = e^0 = 1$. If $a \neq 0$, the convergence follows from the ratio test. Indeed,

$$\left| \frac{\frac{a^{n+1}}{(n+1)!}}{\frac{a^n}{n!}} \right| = \frac{|a|}{n+1} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0.$$

◇

Theorem 3.24 (Root test).

(1) If $\exists r \in (0, 1)$ and $\exists N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\forall n > N$, $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} \leq r$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges absolutely.

(2) If for infinitely many n , $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} \geq 1$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ diverges.

Proof. (1) We have $|a_n| \leq r^n$ for all $n > N$, so that by the Comparison Test, $\sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges.

(2) Suppose that for the subsequence $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$, we have $\sqrt[n_k]{|a_{n_k}|} \geq 1$. Then $|a_{n_k}| \geq 1$. If the series was convergent, then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$, and so also $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_{n_k}| = 0$, a contradiction. Thus the series cannot converge. □



It does not suffice for convergence of the series that for sufficiently large n , $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} < 1$.

For example, for the harmonic series $\sqrt[n]{|a_n|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt[n]{n}} < 1$, but $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$ diverges.

Exercise 3.25. Determine if the following series are convergent or not.

(1) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^2}{2^n}$.

(2) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(n!)^2}{(2n)!}$.

(3) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^n n^5$.

Exercise 3.26. Prove that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{n^4 + n^2 + 1}$ converges. (*) Can you also find its value? *Hint:* Write the denominator as $(n^2 + 1)^2 - n^2$.

Exercise 3.27. (*) Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence of real numbers such that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^4$ converges.

Show that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^5$ converges. *Hint:* First conclude that for large n , $|a_n| < 1$.

Exercise 3.28. (*) We have seen that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^p}$ converges if and only if $p > 1$. Suppose that we sum the series for all n that can be written without using the numeral 9. (Imagine that the key for 9 on the keyboard is broken.) Call the resulting summation \sum' . Prove that the series $\sum' \frac{1}{n^p}$ converges if and only if $p > \log_{10} 9$. *Hint:* First show that there are $8 \cdot 9^{k-1}$ numbers without 9 between 10^{k-1} and 10^k .

Exercise 3.29. Determine if the following statements are true or false. Give reasons for your answers.

- (1) If $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ is convergent, then so is $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2$.
- (2) If $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ is convergent, then so is $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2$.
- (3) If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges.
- (4) If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (a_1 + \cdots + a_n) = 0$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges.
- (5) $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \log \frac{n+1}{n}$ converges.
- (6) If $a_n > 0$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) and the partial sums of $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are bounded above, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges.
- (7) If $a_n > 0$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) and $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{a_n}$ diverges.

Exercise 3.30 (Fourier series). In order to understand a complicated situation, it is natural to try to break it up into simpler things. For example, from Calculus we learn that an analytic function can be expanded into a Taylor series, where we break it down into the simplest possible analytic functions, namely monomials $1, x, x^2, \dots$ as follows:

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \dots$$

The idea behind the Fourier series is similar. In order to understand a complicated *periodic* function, we break it down into the simplest periodic functions, namely sines and cosines. Thus if $T \geq 0$ and $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is T -*periodic*, that is, $f(x) = f(x + T)$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$), then one tries to find coefficients a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots and b_1, b_2, b_3, \dots such that

$$f(x) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(a_n \cos\left(\frac{2\pi n}{T}x\right) + b_n \sin\left(\frac{2\pi n}{T}x\right) \right). \quad (3.3)$$

- (1) Suppose that the Fourier series given in (3.3) converges pointwise to f on \mathbb{R} . Show that if

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (|a_n| + |b_n|) < \infty,$$

then in fact the series converges uniformly.

- (2) The aim of this part of the exercise is to give experimental evidence for two things. Firstly, the plausibility of the Fourier expansion, and secondly, that the uniform convergence might fail if the condition in the previous part of this exercise does not hold. To this end, let us consider the *square wave* $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \in [n, n+1) \text{ for } n \text{ even,} \\ -1 & \text{if } x \in [n, n+1) \text{ for } n \text{ odd.} \end{cases}$$

Then f is a 2-periodic signal. From the theory of Fourier Series, which we will not discuss in this course, the coefficients can be calculated, and they happen to be $0 = a_0 = a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = \dots$ and

$$b_n = \begin{cases} \frac{4}{n\pi} & \text{if } n \text{ is odd,} \\ 0 & \text{if } n \text{ is even.} \end{cases}$$

Write a Maple program to plot the graphs of the partial sums of the series in (3.3) with, say, 3, 33, 333 terms. Discuss your observations.

Exercise 3.31. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence with nonnegative terms. Show that if $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges, then

so does $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sqrt{a_n a_{n+1}}$.

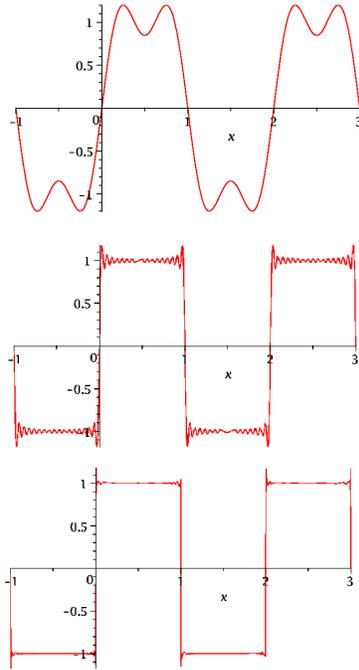


Figure 2. Partial sums of the Fourier series for the square wave considered in Exercise 3.30.

Exercise 3.32. (*) Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence with nonnegative terms. Prove that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges if and only if $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n}{1+a_n}$ converges.

Exercise 3.33. Let ℓ^1 be defined by $\ell^1 = \left\{ (a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} : \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n| < \infty \right\}$. Show that $\ell^1 \subseteq \ell^2$. Is $\ell^1 = \ell^2$?

(The normed space ℓ^2 was defined in Exercise 1.19 on page 6.)

Exercise 3.34. As the harmonic series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$ diverges, the reciprocal $1/s_n$ of the n th partial sum

$$s_n := 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n}$$

approaches 0 as $n \rightarrow \infty$. So the necessary condition for the convergence of the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{s_n}$$

is satisfied. But we don't know yet whether or not it actually converges. It is clear that the harmonic series diverges very slowly, which means that $1/s_n$ decreases very slowly, and this prompts the guess that this series diverges. Show that in fact our guess is correct. *Hint:* $s_n \leq n$.

Exercise 3.35. Show that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^n}$ converges.

Exercise 3.36. Consider the Fibonacci sequence $(F_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ with $F_0 = F_1 = 1$ and $F_{n+1} = F_n + F_{n-1}$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Show that

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F_n} < +\infty.$$

Hint: $F_{n+1} = F_n + F_{n-1} > F_{n-1} + F_{n-1} = 2F_{n-1}$. Using this, show that both $\frac{1}{F_0} + \frac{1}{F_2} + \frac{1}{F_4} + \dots$ and $\frac{1}{F_1} + \frac{1}{F_3} + \frac{1}{F_5} + \dots$ converge.

3.1.2. Power series. Let $(c_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a real sequence (thought of as a sequence of “coefficients”). An expression of the type

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^n$$

is called a *power series* in the variable $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Example 3.37. All polynomial expressions are (finite) power series, with the coefficients being eventually all zeros.

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n, \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} x^n \text{ are also examples of power series.} \quad \diamond$$

Note that we have not said anything about the set of $x \in \mathbb{R}$ where the power series converges. Of course the power series always converges for $x = 0$. It turns out that there is a maximal open interval $B(0, r) = (-r, r)$ centered at 0 where the power series converges absolutely, and we call the radius r of this interval $B(0, r) = (-r, r)$ as the *radius of convergence* of the power series. If the power series converges for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, that is, if the above maximal interval is $(-\infty, \infty)$, we say that the power series has *infinite radius of convergence*.

Example 3.38. The radius of convergence of $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n$ is 1. Indeed, the geometric series converges for $x \in (-1, 1)$ and diverges whenever $|x| \geq 1$. \diamond

Example 3.39. The radius of convergence of $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} x^n$ is infinite, since e^x converges for every $x \in \mathbb{R}$. \diamond

Example 3.40. The radius of convergence of $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n^n x^n$ is zero. Indeed, whenever $x \neq 0$,

$$\sqrt[n]{|n^n x^n|} = n|x| > 1$$

for all n large enough. By the Root test, it follows that the power series diverges for all nonzero real numbers. \diamond

Theorem 3.41. *A power series*

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^n$$

is either absolutely convergent for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, or there is a unique nonnegative real number ρ such that the power series is absolutely convergent for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|x| < \rho$ and is divergent for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|x| > \rho$.

Proof. Let $S := \left\{ y \in \mathbb{R} : \text{there exists an } x \in \mathbb{R} \text{ such that } y = |x| \text{ and } \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^n \text{ converges} \right\}$.

Clearly $0 \in S$. We consider the following two possible cases.

$\underline{1}^\circ$ S is not bounded above. Then given $x \in \mathbb{R}$, we can find a $|x_0| \in S$ such that $|x| < |x_0|$

and $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x_0^n$ converges. It follows that its n th term goes to 0 as $n \rightarrow \infty$, and in

particular, it is bounded: $|c_n x_0^n| \leq M$. Then with $r := \frac{|x|}{|x_0|}$ (< 1), we have

$$|c_n x^n| = |c_n x_0^n| \left(\frac{|x|}{|x_0|} \right)^n \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}),$$

But the Geometric Series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} M r^n$ converges, and so by the Comparison Test, the series

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^n \text{ is absolutely convergent.}$$

$\underline{2}^\circ$ S is bounded above. Let $\rho := \sup S$.

If $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $|x| < \rho$, then by the definition of supremum, it follows that there exists

a $|x_0| \in S$ such that $|x| < |x_0|$. Then we repeat the proof in 1° above to conclude that

the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^n$ is absolutely convergent.

On the other hand, if $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $|x| > \rho$, then $|x| \notin S$, and by the definition of S ,

the series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^n$ diverges.

If ρ, ρ' have the property described in the theorem and $\rho < \rho'$, then $\rho < r := \frac{\rho + \rho'}{2} < \rho'$.

Because $0 < r < \rho'$, $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n r^n$ converges, while as $\rho < r$, it follows that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n r^n$ diverges, a contradiction. \square

If ρ is the radius of convergence of a power series, then $(-\rho, \rho)$ is called the *interval of convergence* of that power series. We note that the interval of convergence is the empty set if $\rho = 0$, and we set the interval of convergence to be \mathbb{R} when the radius of convergence is infinite. See Figure 3.

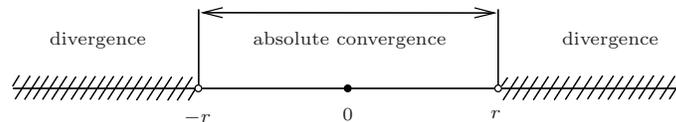


Figure 3. The interval of convergence of a power series.

The calculation of the radius of convergence is facilitated in some cases by the following result.

Theorem 3.42. Consider the power series

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^n.$$

If $L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right|$ exists, then $\rho = 1/L$ if $L \neq 0$, and the radius of convergence is infinite if $L = 0$.

Proof. Let $L \neq 0$. We have that for all nonzero x such that $|x| < \rho = 1/L$ that there exists a $q < 1$ and a N large enough such that

$$\frac{|c_{n+1}x^{n+1}|}{|c_n x^n|} = \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| |x| \leq q < 1$$

for all $n > N$. (This is because

$$\left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} x \right| \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} L|x| < 1.$$

So we may take for example $q = (L|x| + 1)/2 < 1$.) Thus by the Ratio Test, the power series converges absolutely for such x .

If $L = 0$, then for any nonzero $x \in \mathbb{R}$, we can guarantee that

$$\frac{|c_{n+1}x^{n+1}|}{|c_n x^n|} = \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| |x| \leq q < 1$$

for all $n > N$. (This is because

$$\left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} x \right| \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0|x| = 0 < 1.$$

So we may take for example $q = 1/2 < 1$.) Thus again by the Ratio Test, the power series converges absolutely for such x .

On the other hand, if $L \neq 0$ and $|x| > 1/L$, then there exists a N large enough such that

$$\frac{|c_{n+1}x^{n+1}|}{|c_n x^n|} = \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| |x| > 1$$

for all $n > N$. This is because

$$\left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} x \right| \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} L|x| > 1.$$

So again by the Ratio Test, the power series diverges. \square

Exercise 3.43. (*) Consider the power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n x^n$. If $L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|c_n|}$ exists, then $\rho = 1/L$ if $L \neq 0$, and the radius of convergence is infinite if $L = 0$.



Note that whether or not the power series converges at $x = \rho$ and $x = -\rho$ is not answered by Theorem 3.41. In fact this is a delicate issue, and either convergence or divergence can take place at these points, as demonstrated by the following examples.

Example 3.44. We have the following:

Power series	Radius of convergence	Set of x 's for which the power series converges
$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^n$	1	$(-1, 1)$
$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n^2}$	1	$[-1, 1]$
$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n}$	1	$[-1, 1)$
$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{x^n}{n}$	1	$(-1, 1]$

◇

Exercise 3.45. Check all the claims in Example 3.44.

Exercise 3.46. Find the radius of convergence for each of the following power series:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{x^{2n-1}}{(2n-1)!} = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - + \cdots \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - + \cdots.$$

3.2. Series in normed spaces

We can't define series in a general metric space, since we need to *add* terms. But in the setting of a normed space, addition of vectors is available, and so we can define the notion of convergence of a series in a normed space.

Definition 3.47. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in a normed space $(X, \|\cdot\|)$. The sequence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of *partial sums* is defined as follows:

$$s_n = a_1 + \cdots + a_n \in X \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}).$$

The series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$$

is called *convergent* if $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges in $(X, \|\cdot\|)$. Then we write

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n.$$

If the sequence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not converge we say that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ *diverges*.

It turns out the convergence in a *complete* normed space is guaranteed by the convergence of an associated real series (of the norms of its terms). We first introduce the notion of *absolute convergence* of a series in a normed space, analogous to the absolute convergence of a real series.

Definition 3.48. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in a normed space $(X, \|\cdot\|)$. We say that the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$$

converges absolutely if the (real) series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|a_n\|$ converges.

Theorem 3.49. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in a complete normed space $(X, \|\cdot\|)$ such that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|a_n\| < +\infty$. Then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges in X .

Proof. The proof is the same, *mutatis mutandis*, as the proof of the fact that absolutely convergent real series converge. The only change is we use norms instead of absolute values, and use the completeness of X in order to conclude that when the partial sums form a Cauchy sequence, they converge to a limit in X .

Let $s_n := a_1 + \cdots + a_n$. We will show that $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence. We have for $n > m$:

$$\begin{aligned} \|s_n - s_m\| &= \|(a_1 + \cdots + a_n) - (a_1 + \cdots + a_m)\| = \|a_{m+1} + \cdots + a_n\| \\ &\leq \|a_{m+1}\| + \cdots + \|a_n\| = (\|a_1\| + \cdots + \|a_n\|) - (\|a_1\| + \cdots + \|a_m\|) = \sigma_n - \sigma_m, \end{aligned}$$

where $\sigma_k := \|a_1\| + \cdots + \|a_k\|$. Since the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|a_n\|$$

converges (given!), its sequence of partial sums is convergent, and in particular, Cauchy. This shows, in light of the above inequality $\|s_n - s_m\| \leq \sigma_n - \sigma_m$, that $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in X . As X is complete, $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent. \square

Example 3.50. Consider the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in the normed space $(C[0, 1], \|\cdot\|_{\infty})$, where

$$f_n(x) = \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^n \quad (x \in [0, 1], n \in \mathbb{N}).$$

The series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n$ converges in $(C[0, 1], \|\cdot\|_{\infty})$ since

$$\|f_n\|_{\infty} = \max_{x \in [0, 1]} \left| \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^n \right| = \frac{1}{2^n},$$

and the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|f_n\|_{\infty} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^n}$ converges.

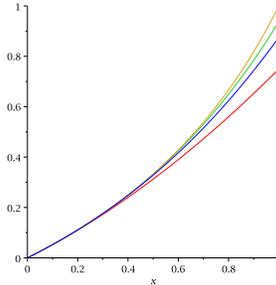


Figure 4. Plots of the graphs of the partial sums and the limit f .

In fact, one can see directly that since

$$s_n(x) = f_1(x) + \cdots + f_n(x) = \frac{\frac{x}{2} \left(1 - \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^{n+1}\right)}{1 - \left(\frac{x}{2}\right)} = \frac{x}{2-x} \left(1 - \frac{x^n}{2^n}\right),$$

with f defined by $f(x) = \frac{x}{2-x}$, we have that

$$\|s_n - f\|_{\infty} = \max_{x \in [0, 1]} \frac{x}{2-x} \frac{x^n}{2^n} \leq \frac{1}{2^n} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0,$$

and so the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n$ converges to f in $(C[0, 1], \|\cdot\|_{\infty})$.

Figure 3.50 shows plots of the partial sums and their limit f . \diamond

The following result plays a central role in Differential Equation theory.

Theorem 3.51. Let $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$. Then the exponential series

$$e^A := I + A + \frac{1}{2!}A^2 + \frac{1}{3!}A^3 + \cdots$$

converges in $(\mathbb{R}^{n \times n}, \|\cdot\|_{\infty})$.

Proof. It is easy to see that if $A, B \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, then $\|AB\|_\infty \leq n\|A\|_\infty\|B\|_\infty$. This follows immediately from:

$$|(AB)_{ij}| = \left| \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}B_{kj} \right| \leq \sum_{k=1}^n |A_{ik}||B_{kj}| \leq \sum_{k=1}^n \|A\|_\infty\|B\|_\infty = n\|A\|_\infty\|B\|_\infty.$$

Hence by induction, we have $\|A^k\|_\infty \leq n^{k-1}\|A\|_\infty^k \leq (n\|A\|_\infty)^k$. Thus

$$\left\| \frac{1}{k!} A^k \right\|_\infty \leq \frac{1}{k!} (n\|A\|_\infty)^k.$$

As the series $e^{n\|A\|_\infty} = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!} (n\|A\|_\infty)^k$ converges, by the Comparison Test, the real series

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left\| \frac{1}{k!} A^k \right\|_\infty$$

converges. Since $(\mathbb{R}^{n \times n}, \|\cdot\|_\infty)$ is complete, it follows that

$$e^A := I + A + \frac{1}{2!}A^2 + \frac{1}{3!}A^3 + \dots$$

converges in $(\mathbb{R}^{n \times n}, \|\cdot\|_\infty)$. □

Exercise 3.52. Calculate

(1) $e^{\mathbf{0}}$ (here $\mathbf{0}$ denotes the $n \times n$ matrix with all entries 0)

(2) e^I

$$(3) e^{\begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \lambda_n \end{bmatrix}}$$

Exercise 3.53. Give an example of a normed space and an absolutely convergent series inside this space that is not convergent.

Hint: Consider the normed space c_{00} that consists of sequences that are eventually 0, with the norm of $x = (x^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ defined to be $\|x\|_2 = \|(x^{(n)})\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (x^{(n)})^2}$. Show that c_{00} is a subspace of ℓ^2 . Find a sequence $(x_k)_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ in c_{00} such that $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x_k = (1, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{9}, \frac{1}{16}, \dots)$, which is an element of ℓ_2 but not of c_{00} .

Exercise 3.54. (*) Let X be a normed space in which every series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ for which there holds

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \|a_n\| < +\infty,$$

is convergent in X . Prove that X is complete. *Hint: Given a Cauchy sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, construct a subsequence $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ satisfying $\|x_{n_{k+1}} - x_{n_k}\| < \frac{1}{2^k}$. Then take $a_1 = x_{n_1}$, $a_2 = x_{n_2} - x_{n_1}$, $a_3 = x_{n_3} - x_{n_2}$, and so on, and use the fact that a Cauchy sequence possessing a convergent subsequence must itself be convergent, which was a result established in Exercise 2.25.*

3.3. Notes (not part of the course)

In connection with the divergence of the harmonic series, we mention the following

Erdős conjecture on arithmetic progressions (APs) : If the sums of the reciprocals of the numbers of a set A of natural numbers diverges then A contains arbitrarily long arithmetic progressions.

That is, if $\sum_{n \in A} \frac{1}{n}$ diverges, then A contains APs of any given length.

We know that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$ diverges, and in this case the claim is trivially true. It can be shown that

$$\sum_{p \text{ is prime}} \frac{1}{p}$$

diverges. So one may ask: Does the claim hold in this special case? The answer is “Yes”, and this is the Green-Tao Theorem proved in 2004. Terence Tao was awarded the Fields Medal in 2006, among other things, for this result.

Chapter 4

Continuous functions

4.1. Continuity of functions from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R}

Recall that continuity is a “local” concept, and we have the following notion of the continuity of a function at a point.

Definition 4.1. Let I be an interval and let $c \in I$. $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is said to be *continuous at c* if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x \in I$ satisfies $|x - c| < \delta$, we have $|f(x) - f(c)| < \epsilon$.

f is said to be *continuous on I* if for every $c \in I$, f is continuous at c .

We have seen that if $f, g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are continuous on \mathbb{R} , then their *composition* $f \circ g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) \quad (x \in \mathbb{R}),$$

is also continuous on \mathbb{R} .

Recall also that we had learnt the following important properties possessed by continuous functions: they preserve convergent sequences, the Intermediate Value Theorem and the Extreme Value Theorem.

Theorem 4.2. Let I be an interval, $c \in I$, and $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. The following are equivalent:

- (1) f is continuous at c .
- (2) For every sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ contained in I such that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to c , the sequence $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $f(c)$.

In other words, f is continuous at c if and only if f “preserves” convergent sequences.

Exercise 4.3. Show that the statement (2) in Theorem 4.2 can be weakened to the following:

- (2') For every sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ contained in I such that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to c , the sequence $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges.

Theorem 4.4 (Intermediate Value Theorem). Let $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be continuous on $[a, b]$. If $y \in \mathbb{R}$ is such that $f(a) \leq y \leq f(b)$ or $f(b) \leq y \leq f(a)$ (that is, if y lies between $f(a)$ and $f(b)$), then there exists a $c \in [a, b]$ such that $f(c) = y$.

In other words, a continuous function attains all real values between the values of the function attained at the endpoints.

Finally, we recall the Extreme Value Theorem.

Theorem 4.5 (Extreme Value Theorem). *Let $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be continuous on $[a, b]$. There exists a $c \in [a, b]$ and there exists a $d \in [a, b]$ such that*

$$\begin{aligned} f(c) &= \sup\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\}, \\ f(d) &= \inf\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\}. \end{aligned}$$

We note that since $c, d \in [a, b]$, we have $f(c), f(d) \in \{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\}$, and so the supremum and infimum are in fact maximum and minimum, respectively:

$$\begin{aligned} f(c) &= \sup\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\} = \max\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\}, \\ f(d) &= \inf\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\} = \min\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\}. \end{aligned}$$

We observe that in our definition of continuity of a function at a point, the key idea is that:

“We are guaranteed that $f(x)$ stays close to $f(c)$ for all x close enough to c .”

But “closeness” is something we know not just in \mathbb{R} but in the context of general metric spaces! We will now learn that indeed continuity can in fact be defined in a quite abstract setting, when we have maps between metric spaces. We will also gain insights into the above properties of continuous functions when we study analogues of the above results in our more general setting.

Exercise 4.6. Consider the function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \text{ is rational,} \\ -x & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational.} \end{cases}$$

Prove that f is continuous only at 0. *Hint:* For every rational number, there is a sequence of irrational numbers that converges to it, and for every irrational number, there is a sequence of rational numbers that converges to it, by the results in Exercise 1.39, 1.40.

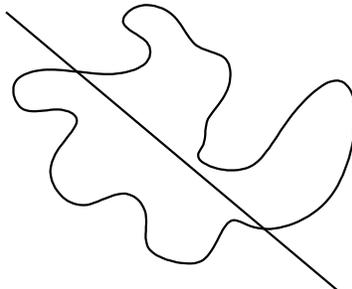
Exercise 4.7. (*) Every nonzero rational number x can be uniquely written as $x = n/d$, where n, d denote integers without any common divisors and $d > 0$. When $r = 0$, we take $d = 1$ and $n = 0$. Consider the function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is irrational,} \\ \frac{1}{d} & \text{if } x \left(= \frac{n}{d} \right) \text{ is rational.} \end{cases}$$

Prove that f is discontinuous at every rational number, and continuous at every irrational number.

Hint: For an irrational number x , given any $\epsilon > 0$, and any interval $(N, N + 1)$ containing x , show that there are just finitely many rational numbers r in $(N, N + 1)$ for which $f(r) \geq \epsilon$. Use this to show the continuity at irrationals.

Exercise 4.8. Consider a flat pancake of arbitrary shape. Show that there is a straight line cut that divides the pancake into two parts having equal areas. Can the direction of the straight line cut be chosen arbitrarily?



4.2. Continuity of maps between metric spaces

Definition 4.9. Let (X, d_X) , (Y, d_Y) be metric spaces, $c \in X$ and $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a map. f is said to be *continuous at c* if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x \in X$ satisfies $d_X(x, c) < \delta$, we have $d_Y(f(x), f(c)) < \epsilon$. See Figure 1.

f is said to be *continuous on X* if for every $c \in X$, f is continuous at c .

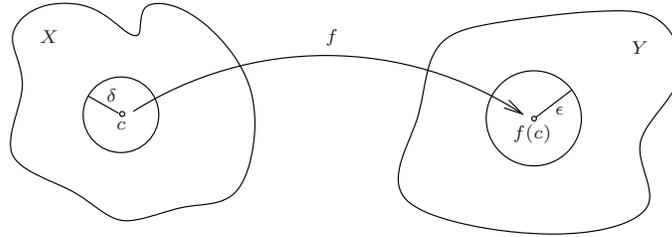


Figure 1. Continuity of f at c .

First of all we notice that if I is an interval in \mathbb{R} , and we take $X = I$, $Y = \mathbb{R}$, both equipped with the Euclidean metric, then the above definition of continuity of a function $f : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ at a $c \in \mathbb{R}$ coincides with our earlier Definition 4.1.

We remark that although X may be equal to Y , they might be equipped with different metrics; see as an extreme example, Exercise 4.11 below.

Exercise 4.10. Show that $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x_1 x_2}{\sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2}} & \text{if } x \neq 0, \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$ is continuous at 0.

Exercise 4.11. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by $f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \leq 0, \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 0. \end{cases}$

- (1) If both the domain $X = \mathbb{R}$ and the codomain $Y = \mathbb{R}$ are equipped with the Euclidean metric, then show that f is not continuous at 0.
- (2) On the other hand, if we equip the domain $X = \mathbb{R}$ of f with the discrete metric, and the codomain $Y = \mathbb{R}$ of f with the Euclidean metric, then prove that f is continuous at 0.

Exercise 4.12. Let (X, d) be a metric space, and let $p \in X$. Show that the distance to p is a continuous map, that is, prove that the function $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $f(x) := d(x, p)$ ($x \in X$) is continuous.

Exercise 4.13. (*) Show that addition $(x, y) \mapsto x + y$ and multiplication $(x, y) \mapsto xy$ are continuous maps from \mathbb{R}^2 to \mathbb{R} with the usual Euclidean metrics.

Exercise 4.14. (*) Consider the normed space $(C[0, 1], \|\cdot\|_\infty)$, and let $S : C[0, 1] \rightarrow C[0, 1]$ be defined by

$$(S(f))(x) = (f(x))^2 \quad (x \in [0, 1], f \in C[0, 1]).$$

Show that S is continuous.

Proposition 4.15. Let (X, d_X) be a metric space, and let $f_n : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) be a sequence of continuous functions that converges uniformly to $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Then f is continuous.

Proof. Let $c \in X$ and $\epsilon > 0$. Choose an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $x \in X$, $|f_N(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon/3$. As f_N is continuous, we can find a $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x \in X$ satisfying $d_X(x, c) < \delta$, we have $|f_N(x) - f_N(c)| < \epsilon/3$. So for all $x \in X$ satisfying $d_X(x, c) < \delta$, we have using the triangle inequality that

$$|f(x) - f(c)| \leq |f(x) - f_N(x)| + |f_N(x) - f_N(c)| + |f_N(c) - f(c)| < \epsilon/3 + \epsilon/3 + \epsilon/3 = \epsilon.$$

Hence f is continuous at c . Since the choice of $c \in X$ was arbitrary, it follows that f is continuous on X . \square

Exercise 4.16. A subset S of \mathbb{R}^n is said to be *path connected* if for any two points $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, there exists a continuous function $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow S$ such that $\gamma(0) = x$ and $\gamma(1) = y$. (We think of γ as a “path” beginning at x and ending at y .)

- (1) Show that every convex set¹ $C (\subseteq \mathbb{R}^n)$ is path connected.
- (2) We define the relation R on S by setting xRy if there is a path $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow S$ such that $\gamma(0) = x$ and $\gamma(1) = y$. Prove that R is an equivalence relation on S . The equivalence classes of S under R are called the *path components* of S . Thus if S is path connected, then it has a unique path component, namely S itself.
- (3) Which of the following subsets of \mathbb{R}^2 are path connected? If the set is not path connected, then determine its path components. $\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x^2 + y^2 = 1\}$, $\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : xy = 0\}$, $\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : xy = 1\}$.

4.3. Continuous maps and open sets

We will now learn an important property of continuous functions, namely that “inverse images” of open sets under a continuous map are open. In fact, we will see that this property is a characterization of continuity.

But first we fix some standard notation. Let $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a map, and let $V \subseteq Y$. Then we set $f^{-1}(V) := \{x \in X : f(x) \in V\}$, and call it the *inverse image of V under f* . See Figure 2. Clearly $f^{-1}(Y) = X$ and $f^{-1}(\emptyset) = \emptyset$.

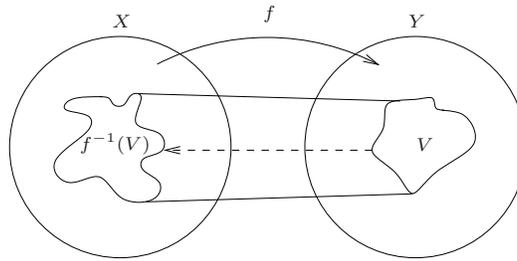


Figure 2. Inverse image of V under f .

Exercise 4.17. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by $f(x) = \cos x$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$). Find $f^{-1}(V)$, where $V = \{-1, 1\}$, $V = \{1\}$, $V = [-1, 1]$, $V = \mathbb{R}$, $V = (-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$.

On the other hand if $U \subseteq X$, then we set $f(U) := \{f(x) \in Y : x \in U\}$, and call it the *image of U under f* . See Figure 3.

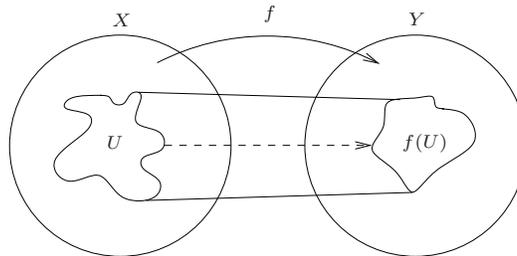


Figure 3. Image of U under f .

Exercise 4.18. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by $f(x) = \cos x$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$). Find $f(U)$, where $U = \mathbb{R}$, $U = [0, 2\pi]$, $U = [\delta, \delta + 2\pi]$ where δ is any positive number.

¹See Exercise 1.41 for the definition of convex sets.

Theorem 4.19. *Let (X, d_X) , (Y, d_Y) be metric spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a map. Then f is continuous on X if and only if for every V open in Y , $f^{-1}(V)$ is open in X .*

Proof. (If) Let $c \in X$, and let $\epsilon > 0$. Consider the open ball $B(f(c), \epsilon)$ with center $f(c)$ and radius ϵ in Y . We know that this open ball $V := B(f(c), \epsilon)$ is an open set in Y . Thus we also know that $f^{-1}(V) = f^{-1}(B(f(c), \epsilon))$ is an open set in X . But the point $c \in f^{-1}(B(f(c), \epsilon))$, because $f(c) \in B(f(c), \epsilon)$ ($d_Y(f(c), f(c)) = 0 < \epsilon!$). So by the definition of an open set, there is a $\delta > 0$ such that $B(c, \delta) \subseteq f^{-1}(B(f(c), \epsilon))$. In other words, whenever $x \in X$ satisfies $d_X(x, c) < \delta$, we have that $x \in f^{-1}(B(f(c), \epsilon))$, that is, $f(x) \in B(f(c), \epsilon)$, which implies $d_Y(f(x), f(c)) < \epsilon$. Hence f is continuous at c . But the choice of $c \in X$ was arbitrary. Consequently f is continuous on X . See the picture on the left side of Figure 4.

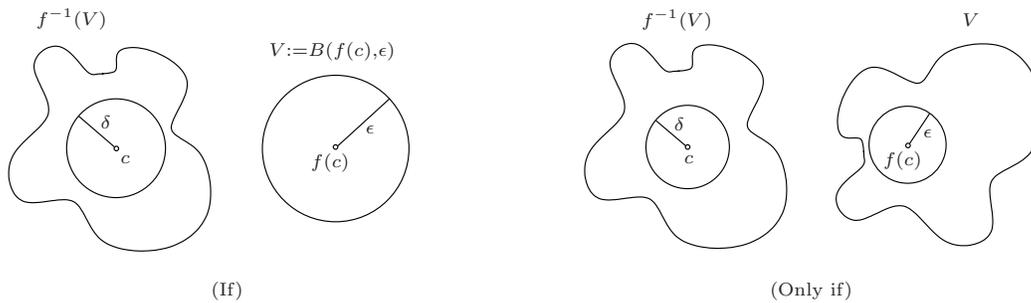


Figure 4. Continuity and open sets: Proof of Theorem 4.19.

(Only if) Now suppose that f is continuous, and let V be an open subset of Y . We would like to show that $f^{-1}(V)$ is open. So let $c \in f^{-1}(V)$. Then $f(c) \in V$. As V is open, there is a small open ball $B(f(c), \epsilon)$ with center $f(c)$ and radius ϵ that is contained in V . By the continuity of f at c , there is a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $d_X(x, c) < \delta$, we have $d_Y(f(x), f(c)) < \epsilon$, that is, $f(x) \in V$. But this means that $B(c, \delta) \subseteq f^{-1}(V)$. Indeed, if $x \in B(c, \delta)$, then $d_X(x, c) < \delta$ and so by the above, $f(x) \in V$, that is, $x \in f^{-1}(V)$. Consequently, $f^{-1}(V)$ is open in X . See the picture on the right side of Figure 4. \square

\diamond Note that the theorem does *not* claim that for every U open in X , $f(U)$ is open in Y . Consider for example $X = Y = \mathbb{R}$ equipped with the Euclidean metric, and the constant function $f(x) = c$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$). Then $X = \mathbb{R}$ is open in $X = \mathbb{R}$, but $f(X) = \{c\}$ is not open in $Y = \mathbb{R}$.

Corollary 4.20. *Let (X, d_X) , (Y, d_Y) be metric spaces and $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a map. Then f is continuous on X if and only if for every F closed in Y , $f^{-1}(F)$ is closed in X .*

Proof. If $F \subseteq Y$, then $f^{-1}(Y \setminus F) = X \setminus (f^{-1}(F))$. \square

Exercise 4.21. Fill in the details of the proof of Corollary 4.20.

Theorem 4.22. *Let (X, d_X) , (Y, d_Y) , (Z, d_Z) be metric spaces, $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ be continuous maps. Then the composition map $g \circ f : X \rightarrow Z$, defined by $(g \circ f)(x) := g(f(x))$ ($x \in X$), is continuous.*

Proof. Let W be open in Z . Then since g is continuous, $g^{-1}(W)$ is open in Y . Also, since f is continuous, $f^{-1}(g^{-1}(W))$ is open in X . Finally, we note that $(g \circ f)^{-1}(W) = f^{-1}(g^{-1}(W))$. Consequently, $g \circ f$ is continuous. \square

Exercise 4.23. In the proof of Theorem 4.22, we used the fact that $(g \circ f)^{-1}(W) = f^{-1}(g^{-1}(W))$. Check this.

Exercise 4.24. Let X be a metric space and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a continuous map. Determine if the following statements are true or false. Justify your answers.

- (1) $\{x \in X : f(x) < 1\}$ is an open set.
- (2) $\{x \in X : f(x) > 1\}$ is an open set.
- (3) $\{x \in X : f(x) = 1\}$ is an open set.
- (4) $\{x \in X : f(x) \leq 1\}$ is a closed set.
- (5) $\{x \in X : f(x) = 1\}$ is a closed set.
- (6) $\{x \in X : f(x) = 1 \text{ or } f(x) = 2\}$ is a closed set.
- (7) $\{x \in X : f(x) = 1\}$ is a compact set.

Analogous to Theorem 4.2, we have the following characterization of continuous maps in terms of convergence of sequences.

Theorem 4.25. Let $(X, d_X), (Y, d_Y)$ be metric spaces, $c \in X$, and let $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a map. Then following two statements are equivalent:

- (1) f is continuous at c .
- (2) For every sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in X such that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to c , $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $f(c)$.

Proof. (1) \Rightarrow (2): Suppose that f is continuous at c . Let $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in X such that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to c . Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x \in X$ satisfying $d_X(x, c) < \delta$, we have $d_Y(f(x), f(c)) < \epsilon$. As the sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to c , for this $\delta > 0$, there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $n > N$, $d_X(x_n, c) < \delta$. But then by the above, $d_Y(f(x_n), f(c)) < \epsilon$. So we have shown that for every $\epsilon > 0$, there is an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$, $d_Y(f(x_n), f(c)) < \epsilon$. In other words, the sequence $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $f(c)$.

(2) \Rightarrow (1): Suppose that f is not continuous at c . This means that there is an $\epsilon > 0$ such that for every $\delta > 0$, there is an $x \in X$ such that $d_X(x, c) < \delta$, but $d_Y(f(x), f(c)) > \epsilon$. We will use this statement to construct a sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ for which the conclusion in (2) does not hold. Choose $\delta = 1/n$, and denote the corresponding x as x_n : thus, $d_X(x_n, c) < \delta = 1/n$, but $d_Y(f(x_n), f(c)) > \epsilon$. Clearly the sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit c , but $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not converge to $f(c)$ since $d_Y(f(x_n), f(c)) > \epsilon$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Consequently if (1) does not hold, then (2) does not hold. In other words, we have shown that (2) \Rightarrow (1). \square

Exercise 4.26. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a continuous function such that for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$, $f(x+y) = f(x) + f(y)$. Show that there exists a real number a such that for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $f(x) = ax$. *Hint:* Show first that for natural numbers n , $f(n) = nf(1)$. Extend this to integers n , and then to rational numbers n/d . Finally use the density of \mathbb{Q} in \mathbb{R} to prove the claim.

Exercise 4.27. Find all continuous functions $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $f(x) + f(2x) = 0$.

Hint: Show that $f(x) = -f(\frac{x}{2}) = f(\frac{x}{4}) = -f(\frac{x}{8}) = \dots$.

Exercise 4.28. Show that the multiplication function $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $f(x) = x_1 x_2$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}^2$) is continuous on \mathbb{R}^2 using the characterization of continuous functions in terms of preservation of convergent sequences. Compare this with Exercise 4.13.

Exercise 4.29. (*) Two metric spaces are called *homeomorphic* if there exists a continuous bijection $f : X \rightarrow Y$ such that $f^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$ is also continuous. For example, circles and triangles in \mathbb{R}^2 are homeomorphic; see Figure 5.

Similarly, the an open interval in \mathbb{R} is homeomorphic to a circle missing one point in \mathbb{R}^2 : we just “identify” the two ends of the interval, as shown in the picture on the left hand side of Figure 6. Using this, one can

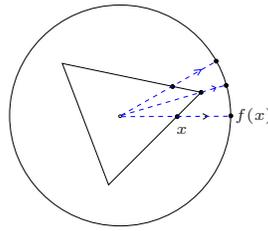


Figure 5. Homeomorphism between the triangle and the circle in \mathbb{R}^2 .

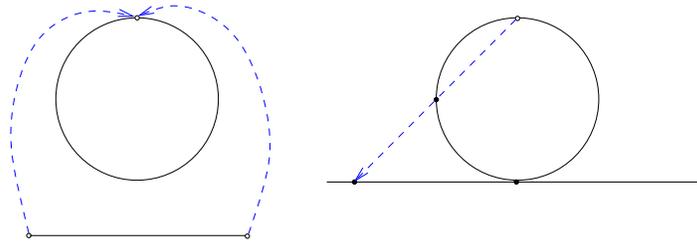


Figure 6. \mathbb{R} is homeomorphic to an open interval in \mathbb{R} .

also see pictorially that the open interval in \mathbb{R} is homeomorphic to \mathbb{R} , as shown in the picture on the right hand side of Figure 6.

A natural question is whether the continuity of f^{-1} is actually implied by the continuity of a bijection f . It is not, and the aim of this exercise is show such an instructive example. Look at Figure 7, where a continuous bijection f is produced from the set $X := [0, 1)$ onto the triangle in \mathbb{R}^2 by “bending” the interval at the three points B, C, D , stretching the parts between the segments BC and CD , and sending points A, B, C, D to the points $f(A) = (1, 0), f(B), f(C), f(D)$ as shown. But now prove that f^{-1} can’t be continuous by looking at the sequence $(1, (-1)^n/n)$.



Figure 7. The triangle in \mathbb{R}^2 and the interval $[0, 1)$.

Exercise 4.30. (*) A “manifold” is a topological space that locally resembles the Euclidean space. More precisely, we will call a subset M of \mathbb{R}^n a *manifold (of dimension² k)* if for every $x \in M$, there is an open set O_x containing x such that O_x is homeomorphic to an open subset U of \mathbb{R}^k . Locally the surface of the earth, which is a sphere, looks flat, and so we expect that the sphere in \mathbb{R}^3 is a manifold of dimension 2. Give an argument, based on pictures, that the unit sphere

$$\mathbb{S}^2 := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 : \|x\|_2 = 1\}$$

is indeed a manifold of dimension 2. (This explains why one uses the superscript “2” on top of \mathbb{S} in the (standard) notation for the unit sphere in \mathbb{R}^3 . Similarly the circle $\mathbb{S}^1 := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 : \|x\|_2 = 1\}$ in \mathbb{R}^2 is a manifold of dimension 1, and is denoted by \mathbb{S}^1 . More generally, it can be shown that the unit sphere $\mathbb{S}^{n-1} := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : \|x\|_2 = 1\}$ in \mathbb{R}^n is a manifold of dimension $n - 1$ in \mathbb{R}^n .)

²It can be shown that this is a well-defined notion.

Exercise 4.31. (*) Consider the function $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x_1^2 - x_2^2}{x_1^2 + x_2^2} & \text{if } x \neq 0, \\ c & \text{if } x = 0. \end{cases}$$

Show that no matter what $c \in \mathbb{R}$ we take in the above, f is not continuous at 0.

Exercise 4.32. (*) Show that the determinant function $M \mapsto \det M$ from $(\mathbb{R}^{n \times n}, \|\cdot\|_\infty)$ to $(\mathbb{R}, |\cdot|)$ is continuous. Prove that the set of invertible matrices is open in $(\mathbb{R}^{n \times n}, \|\cdot\|_\infty)$. *Hint:* Consider $\det^{-1}(\{0\})$.

Exercise 4.33. Give an example of a continuous function $f : X \rightarrow Y$, where X, Y are metric spaces, and a Cauchy sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ for which $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is not a Cauchy sequence in Y .

Exercise 4.34. Let X, Y be metric spaces. A map $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is said to be *open* if for every open subset U of X , $f(U)$ is open in Y .

Now take $X = \mathbb{R}$ with the usual Euclidean metric, and take $Y = \mathbb{R}$ with the discrete metric. Consider the identity map $f : X \rightarrow Y$ defined by $f(x) = x$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$). Show that f is open, but for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, f is not continuous at x .

Exercise 4.35. (*) Define f, g on \mathbb{R}^2 by $f(0, 0) = g(0, 0) = 0$, and if $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$, then we set

$$f(x, y) = \frac{xy^2}{x^2 + y^4}, \quad g(x, y) = \frac{xy^2}{x^2 + y^6}.$$

- (1) Show that f is bounded on \mathbb{R}^2 , that is, $\exists M \in \mathbb{R}$ such that for all $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$, $|f(x, y)| \leq M$.
- (2) Prove that g is unbounded in every ball centered at $(0, 0)$.
- (3) Show that f is not continuous at $(0, 0)$.
- (4) Prove that g is not continuous at $(0, 0)$.
- (5) If $Y \subseteq X$ and if Φ is a function defined on X , the *restriction* of Φ to Y is the function φ whose domain is Y , and such that $\varphi(y) = \Phi(y)$ ($y \in Y$). Show that the restrictions of both f and g to every straight line in \mathbb{R}^2 are continuous!

For functions from the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^n to the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^m , we have the following simplification.

Proposition 4.36. A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ is continuous if and only if each of its components $f_1, \dots, f_m : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are continuous. (Here $f_k(x) := e_k^\top f(x)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, where e_1, \dots, e_d are the standard basis vectors.)

Proof. We have $|f_k(x) - f_k(y)| \leq \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n |f_i(x) - f_i(y)|^2} = \|f(x) - f(y)\|_2$. □

Another case when checking continuity becomes considerably simpler is in the case of *linear transformations* between *normed spaces*.

Proposition 4.37. Let $(X, \|\cdot\|_X)$, $(Y, \|\cdot\|_Y)$ be normed spaces and let $T : X \rightarrow Y$ be a linear transformation. Then the following are equivalent:

- (1) T is continuous.
- (2) T is continuous at 0.
- (3) There exists an $M > 0$ such that for all $x \in X$, $\|Tx\|_Y \leq M\|x\|_X$.

Proof. (1) \Rightarrow (2) follows from the definition. Let us show that (2) \Rightarrow (3). As T is continuous at 0, we have that given $\epsilon := 1 > 0$, there is a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $\|x - 0\|_X = \|x\|_X < \delta$, we have $\|Tx - T0\|_Y = \|Tx - 0\|_Y = \|Tx\|_Y < 1$. Define $M := 2/\delta$. Then if $x = 0$, we have

$\|Tx\|_Y = \|T0\|_Y = \|0\|_Y = 0 \leq (2/\delta) \cdot 0 = M \cdot \|0\|_X = M\|x\|_X$. If on the other hand, $x \neq 0$, then define

$$y := \frac{\delta}{2\|x\|_X}x.$$

Then $\|y\| = \delta/2 < \delta$ and so $\|Ty\|_Y < 1$. We have

$$1 > \|Ty\|_Y = \left\| T\left(\frac{\delta}{2\|x\|_X}x\right) \right\|_Y = \frac{\delta}{2\|x\|_X} \|Tx\|_Y,$$

and so upon rearranging, we obtain

$$\|Tx\|_Y < \frac{2}{\delta}\|x\|_X = M\|x\|_X.$$

Consequently (3) holds.

Finally, we show that (3) \Rightarrow (1). Let $c \in X$, and $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $\delta = \epsilon/M > 0$. Then whenever $\|x - c\|_X < \delta = \epsilon/M$, we have

$$\|Tx - Tc\|_Y = \|T(x - c)\|_Y \leq M\|x - c\|_X < M\delta = M\frac{\epsilon}{M} = \epsilon.$$

Hence f is continuous at c . But the choice of $c \in X$ was arbitrary, and so f is continuous. \square

Example 4.38. Consider the map $I : C[a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ from the normed space $(C[a, b], \|\cdot\|_\infty)$ to \mathbb{R} given by

$$I(f) = \int_a^b f(x)dx \quad (f \in C[a, b]).$$

Then clearly I is a linear transformation. Moreover, since for every $f \in C[a, b]$ we have

$$|I(f)| = \left| \int_a^b f(x)dx \right| \leq \int_a^b |f(x)|dx \leq \int_a^b \|f\|_\infty dx = \|f\|_\infty(b - a),$$

it follows that I is continuous. \diamond

Example 4.39. Let $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$. Consider the map T_A from the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^n to the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^m , given by matrix multiplication:

$$T_Ax = Ax \quad (x \in \mathbb{R}^n).$$

Then T_A is a linear transformation, and it is continuous, since

$$\|T_Ax\|_2 = \|Ax\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^m \left(\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}x_j \right)^2} \leq \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^m n\|A\|_\infty^2 \|x\|_2^2} = \sqrt{mn}\|A\|_\infty \|x\|_2.$$

Hence T_A is continuous. \diamond

Exercise 4.40. Show that if $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$, then $\ker A = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^m : Ax = 0\}$ is a closed subspace of \mathbb{R}^m .

Exercise 4.41. (*) Prove that every subspace of \mathbb{R}^n is closed. *Hint:* Construct a linear transformation whose kernel is the given subspace.

Exercise 4.42. A metric space X is said to be *connected* if X is not the union of two disjoint non-empty open sets.

Prove that a continuous image of a connected set is connected, that is, if X and Y are metric spaces such that X is connected, and if $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is continuous, then $f(X)$ is connected as a metric space (with the metric induced from Y).

4.3.1. Limits and continuity.

Definition 4.43. Let U be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n , $c \in U$, $L \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$. Then we write

$$f(x) \xrightarrow{x \rightarrow c} L$$

or

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L$$

if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x \in U$ satisfies $0 < \|x - c\|_2 < \delta$, we have $\|f(x) - L\|_2 < \epsilon$. We then say that f has a limit at c , and call L its limit.

We can recast this definition in terms of sequences.

Theorem 4.44. Let U be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n , $c \in U$, $L \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$. Then

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L$$

if and only if for every sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ contained in U such that $x_n \neq c$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n = c$,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(x_n) = L.$$

Proof. (If) Suppose that $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L$ does not hold. Then there is an $\epsilon > 0$ such that for every $\delta > 0$, there is a point $x \in U$ (depending on δ), for which $0 < \|x - c\|_2 < \delta$, but $\|f(x) - L\|_2 \geq \epsilon$. Taking δ successively to be $1/n$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), we can thus find a sequence $x_n \in U$ such that $x_n \neq c$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) and $\|f(x_n) - L\|_2 \geq \epsilon$. But this last condition means that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(x_n) = L$ does not hold. This completes the proof of the “if part”.

(Only if) Suppose now that $\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L$, and that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a sequence contained in U such that $x_n \neq c$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n = c$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x \in U$ satisfies $0 < \|x - c\|_2 < \delta$, we have $\|f(x) - L\|_2 < \epsilon$. Also, there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$, $0 < \|x_n - c\|_2 < \delta$. Consequently, for $n > N$ we have $\|f(x_n) - L\|_2 < \epsilon$. Hence $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(x_n) = L$. \square

Corollary 4.45. Let U be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n , $c \in U$ and $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$. If f has a limit at c , then it is unique.

This result follows from the above theorem and the fact that convergent sequences have a unique limit.

Moreover, using the algebra of limits for real sequences, it follows also that the same sort of results carry over to limits of real-valued functions.

Theorem 4.46. Let U be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n , $c \in U$. Suppose that $f, g : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = L_f, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x) = L_g,$$

where $L_f, L_g \in \mathbb{R}$. Define $f + g, fg : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x), \quad (fg)(x) = f(x)g(x) \quad (x \in U).$$

Then we have

$$(1) \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow c} (f + g)(x) = L_f + L_g = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) + \lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x).$$

$$(2) \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow c} (fg)(x) = L_f L_g = \left(\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) \right) \left(\lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x) \right).$$

The following result is clear from the definitions.

Theorem 4.47. *Let U be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n , $c \in U$. Then $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ is continuous at c if and only if*

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(x) = f(c).$$

4.4. Compactness and continuity

In this section we will learn about a very useful result in Optimization Theory, on the existence of global minimizers of real-valued continuous functions on compact sets.

Theorem 4.48. *Let K be a compact subset of a metric space X , and let Y be a metric space. Suppose that $f : K \rightarrow Y$ is a continuous function. Then $f(K)$ is a compact subset of Y .*

Proof. Suppose that $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a sequence contained in $f(K)$. Then for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists an $x_n \in K$ such that $y_n = f(x_n)$. Thus we obtain a sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in the set K . As K is compact, there exists a convergent subsequence, say $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$, with limit $L \in K$. As f is continuous, it preserves convergent sequences. So $(f(x_{n_k}))_{k \in \mathbb{N}} = (y_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit $f(L) \in f(K)$. Consequently, $f(K)$ is compact. \square

Now we prove the aforementioned result which turns out to be very useful in Optimization Theory, namely that a real-valued continuous function on a compact set attains its maximum/minimum. This is a generalization of the Extreme-Value Theorem we had learnt earlier, where the compact set in question was just the interval $[a, b]$.

Theorem 4.49 (Weierstrass's theorem). *Let K be a nonempty compact subset of a metric space X , and let $f : K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a continuous function. Then there exists a $c \in K$ such that*

$$f(c) = \sup\{f(x) : x \in K\}.$$

We note that since $c \in K$, $f(c) \in \{f(x) : x \in K\}$, and so the supremum above is actually a maximum:

$$f(c) = \sup\{f(x) : x \in K\} = \max\{f(x) : x \in K\}.$$

Also, under the same hypothesis of the above result, there exists a minimizer in K , that is, there exists a $d \in K$ such that

$$f(d) = \inf\{f(x) : x \in K\} = \min\{f(x) : x \in K\}.$$

This follows from the above result by just looking at $-f$, that is by applying the above result to the continuous function $g : K \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$g(x) = -f(x) \quad (x \in K).$$

Proof of Theorem 4.49. We know that the image of K under f , namely the set $f(K)$ is compact and hence bounded. So $\{f(x) : x \in K\}$ is bounded. It is also nonempty since K is nonempty. But by the least upper bound property of \mathbb{R} , a nonempty bounded subset of \mathbb{R} has a least upper bound. Thus $M := \sup\{f(x) : x \in K\} \in \mathbb{R}$. Now consider $M - 1/n$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$). This number cannot be an upper bound for $\{f(x) : x \in K\}$. So there must be an $x_n \in K$ such that $f(x_n) > M - 1/n$. In this manner we get a sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in K . As K is compact, $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ has a convergent subsequence $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ with limit, say c , belonging to K . As f is continuous, $(f(x_{n_k}))_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent as well with limit $f(c)$. But from the inequalities $f(x_n) > M - 1/n$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), it follows that $f(c) \geq M$. On the other hand, from the definition of M , we also have that $f(c) \leq M$. Hence $f(c) = M$. \square

Example 4.50. Since the set $K = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 : x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 = 1\}$ is compact in \mathbb{R}^3 and since the function $x \mapsto x_1 + x_2 + x_3$ is continuous on \mathbb{R}^3 , it follows that the optimization problem

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{minimize} & x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \\ \text{subject to} & x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 = 1 \end{array} \right\},$$

has a minimizer. ◇

Remark 4.51. (*) In Optimization Theory, one often meets *necessary* conditions for an optimal solution, that is, results of the following form:

If \hat{x} is an optimal solution to the optimization problem $\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{maximize} & f(x) \\ \text{subject to} & x \in \mathcal{F} (\subseteq \mathbb{R}^n) \end{array} \right\}$,
then \hat{x} satisfies $\boxed{***}$.

(Where $\boxed{***}$ are certain mathematical conditions, such as the Lagrange multiplier equations.) Now such a result has limited use as such since even if we find all $\hat{x}(s)$ which satisfy $\boxed{***}$, we can't conclude that there is one that is optimal. But now suppose that we know that $f : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous and that \mathcal{F} is compact. Then we know that an optimal solution exists, and so we know that among the $\hat{x}(s)$ that satisfy $\boxed{***}$, there is at least one which is an optimal solution.

Exercise 4.52. (*) Let $N : \mathbb{R}^d \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be any norm on \mathbb{R}^d . The aim of this exercise is to show that N is “equivalent to³” $\|\cdot\|_2$, that is, there are constants $M, m > 0$ such that

$$\text{for all } x \in \mathbb{R}^d, m\|x\|_2 \leq N(x) \leq M\|x\|_2.$$

- (1) Let $e_1 = (1, 0, \dots, 0), \dots, e_d = (0, \dots, 0, 1)$ be the standard basis vectors in \mathbb{R}^d . Thus the vector $x = (x_1, \dots, x_d) \in \mathbb{R}^d$ is the linear combination $x_1e_1 + \dots + x_de_d$. Show, using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, that there is a constant $M > 0$ such that for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $N(x) \leq M\|x\|_2$.
- (2) Prove using the triangle inequality for N that for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $|N(x) - N(y)| \leq N(x - y)$. Conclude that the map $N : (\mathbb{R}^d, \|\cdot\|_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous.
- (3) Consider the compact set $K := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d : \|x\|_2 = 1\}$ and use Weierstrass's theorem to prove the existence of $m > 0$ such that for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $m\|x\|_2 \leq N(x)$.

Exercise 4.53. In each case, give an example of a continuous function $f : S \rightarrow T$, such that $f(S) = T$ or else explain why there can be no such f . (We use the usual topologies, for example $(0, 1)$ in the first part has the Euclidean topology of \mathbb{R} .)

- (1) $S = (0, 1), T = (0, 1]$.
- (2) $S = (0, 1), T = (0, 1) \cup (1, 2)$.
- (3) $S = \mathbb{R}, T = \mathbb{Q}$.
- (4) $S = [0, 1] \cup [2, 3], T = \{0, 1\}$.
- (5) $S = [0, 1] \times [0, 1], T = \mathbb{R}^2$.
- (6) $S = [0, 1] \times [0, 1], T = (0, 1) \times (0, 1)$.
- (7) $S = (0, 1) \times (0, 1), T = \mathbb{R}^2$.

Exercise 4.54. (*) Let (X, d) be a metric space and let $f : X \rightarrow X$ be a function that satisfies

$$\text{for all } x, y \in X \text{ such that } x \neq y, d(f(x), f(y)) < d(x, y). \quad (4.1)$$

- (1) Prove that f has at most one fixed point (that is, a point $c \in X$ such that $f(c) = c$).
- (2) Let $X = (0, \frac{1}{2})$ with the usual topology and consider the function $f : X \rightarrow X$ given by $f(x) = x^2$ for $x \in (0, \frac{1}{2})$. Show that f satisfies (4.54), but it has no fixed point.
- (3) Show that the function $g : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by $g(x) = d(x, f(x))$ ($x \in X$) is continuous.
- (4) Prove that if X is compact, then f has exactly one fixed point.
Hint: g attains a minimum on X .

³The fuss about equivalent norms on a vector space X is that whenever two norms N_1, N_2 are equivalent, the open sets in (X, N_1) coincide with the ones in (X, N_2) , and so as topological spaces, they are the same!

Exercise 4.55. Let X be a compact metric space and let $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ be a continuous function. (Here \mathbb{Z} has the Euclidean topology induced from \mathbb{R} .) Prove that f can assume only finitely many values.

Exercise 4.56. (*)

- (1) Show that $[0, 1]$ and $(0, 1)$ are homeomorphic when both spaces are equipped with the discrete metric.
- (2) Show that $[0, 1]$ and $(0, 1)$ are not homeomorphic when both spaces are equipped with the Euclidean metric.

4.5. Uniform continuity

Definition 4.57. Let $(X, d_X), (Y, d_Y)$ be metric spaces. $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is said to be *uniformly continuous* if for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x, y \in X$ satisfying $d_X(x, y) < \delta$, there holds that $d_Y(f(x), f(y)) < \epsilon$.

Note that in the definition we are introducing the notion of uniform continuity of a function *on a set*, and not *at a point*.

While checking *continuity* of a function *on a set*, we check its continuity at every point as follows. Given a point c in X and an $\epsilon > 0$, we need to find a ball of radius δ around c such that the image of that ball under f is contained in a ball of radius ϵ around $f(c)$. But in general, the radius δ of the ball around c may depend on the c we choose, and it may not be possible to use the same δ everywhere in X . For a *uniformly continuous* function, it is possible to choose a δ that depends only on ϵ and *not* on the point c .

Proposition 4.58. Let $(X, d_X), (Y, d_Y)$ be metric spaces. If $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is uniformly continuous, then f is continuous.

Proof. Let $c \in X$. Suppose that $\epsilon > 0$. By the uniform continuity of f , there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x, y \in X$ satisfying $d_X(x, y) < \delta$, there holds that $d_Y(f(x), f(y)) < \epsilon$. In particular, if $x \in X$ satisfies $d_X(x, c) < \delta$, we have $d_Y(f(x), f(c)) < \epsilon$. Thus f is continuous at c . But the choice of c was arbitrary, and so f is continuous on X . \square

The following example shows that uniform continuity is a strictly stronger notion than continuity, that is, there are continuous functions that are not uniformly continuous.

Example 4.59. The function $f : (0, 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$f(x) = 1/x \quad (0 < x < 1)$$

is continuous on $(0, 1)$. Indeed, if $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a convergent sequence in $(0, 1)$ with limit L , then $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (1/x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a convergent sequence with limit $1/L = f(L)$.

However, f is not uniformly continuous. Suppose it is. Then given $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $|x - y| < \delta$, we have

$$\left| \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{y} \right| < \epsilon.$$

Consider $x = \frac{1}{n}$ and $y = \frac{1}{2n}$. Then $|x - y| = \frac{1}{2n}$, and so $|x - y| < \delta$ for all n large enough, but

$$\left| \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{y} \right| = n > \epsilon,$$

for n large enough. \diamond

Exercise 4.60. (*) Show that $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by $f(x) = x^2$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$) is continuous, but not uniformly continuous. *Hint:* Consider $x = n$ and $y = n + \frac{1}{n}$ for large n .

Exercise 4.61. (*) Show that $f: [0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ ($x \geq 0$) is uniformly continuous.

Proposition 4.62. Let $(X, d_X), (Y, d_Y)$ be metric spaces, and suppose that X is compact. If $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is continuous, then f is also uniformly continuous.

Proof. We give an argument by contradiction. So let us suppose that f is not uniformly continuous. Then there exists an $\epsilon > 0$ such that for every $\delta > 0$, there are some $x, y \in X$ such that $d_X(x, y) < \delta$, but $d_Y(f(x), f(y)) \geq \epsilon$. In particular, if we take $\delta = 1/n$, then there exist $x_n, y_n \in X$ such that $d_X(x_n, y_n) < 1/n$ but $d_Y(f(x_n), f(y_n)) \geq \epsilon$. By using the compactness of X , and considering subsequences if necessary, we may assume that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are convergent, with limits say $x, y \in X$, respectively⁴. Since $d_X(x_n, y_n) < 1/n$, we obtain $d_X(x, y) \leq 0$, and so $x = y$. Also, by the continuity of f , we have $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}, (f(y_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converge respectively to $f(x), f(y)$. Hence $d_Y(f(x_n), f(y_n))$ converges to $d_Y(f(x), f(y)) = 0$ (as $x = y$!). But on the other hand, from $d_Y(f(x_n), f(y_n)) \geq \epsilon$, we obtain $d_Y(f(x), f(y)) \geq \epsilon > 0$, a contradiction. \square

Exercise 4.63. Prove that the function $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $f(x) = |x|$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$) is uniformly continuous.

Exercise 4.64. Let (X, d) be a metric space and let $c \in X$. Define $f: X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $f(x) = d(x, c)$. Prove that f is uniformly continuous on X .

Exercise 4.65. A function $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ is said to be (globally) Lipschitz if there exists a number $L > 0$ such that for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\|f(x) - f(y)\|_2 \leq L\|x - y\|_2$. Prove that every Lipschitz function is uniformly continuous.

Exercise 4.66. Let X, Y be metric spaces, and let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ be uniformly continuous. Show that if $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in X , then $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in Y . Compare this with Exercise 4.33.

⁴Since X is compact, the sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ has a convergent subsequence, say $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$, converging to, say $x \in X$. Also, the sequence $(y_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ has a convergent subsequence, say $(y_{n_{k_\ell}})_{\ell \in \mathbb{N}}$, converging to, say $y \in Y$.

Chapter 5

Differentiation

Given a function $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, and a point $c \in (a, b)$, consider the *difference quotient* for $x \in (a, b)$, $x \neq c$:

$$\frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c}.$$

Geometrically, this number represents the slope of the chord passing through the points $(c, f(c))$ and $(x, f(x))$ on the graph of f ; see Figure 1.

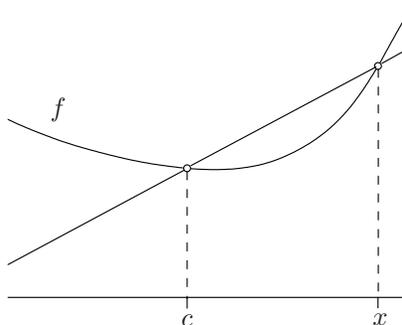


Figure 1. The difference quotient.

Suppose that as x goes to c , the difference quotients approach a number, say L , that is,

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} = L.$$

In other words, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x \in (a, b)$ satisfies $0 < |x - c| < \delta$, we have

$$\left| \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} - L \right| < \epsilon.$$

Then we say that f is *differentiable at the point c* . See Figure 2, where we see the geometric interpretation of L : it is the slope of the tangent to the graph of f at the point c . Notice also that if we “zoom into” the graph of f around the point $(c, f(c))$, the graph seems to coincide with the tangent line. In other words, the tangent line is a “linear approximation” of f near the point c .

The number L is unique, and we denote this unique number by $f'(c)$, and call it the *derivative of f at c* . If f is differentiable at every $c \in (a, b)$, then we say that f is *differentiable on (a, b)* .

Theorem 5.1. *Let $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable at $c \in (a, b)$. Then f is continuous at c .*

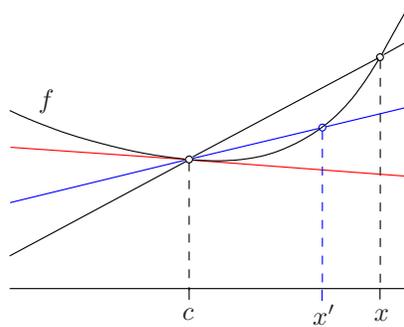


Figure 2. The chords approach the tangent line as x approaches c .

Proof. Let $\epsilon > 0$. First choose a $\delta' > 0$ such that for all $x \in (a, b)$ such that $0 < |x - c| < \delta'$, we have

$$\left| \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} - f'(c) \right| < 1.$$

Then rearrangement (using the triangle inequality) gives

$$|f(x) - f(c)| < (1 + |f'(c)|)|x - c|.$$

Now define $\delta := \min \left\{ \delta', \frac{\epsilon}{1 + |f'(c)|} \right\}$. Then for all $x \in (a, b)$ such that $0 < |x - c| < \delta$, we have

$$|f(x) - f(c)| < (1 + |f'(c)|)|x - c| \leq (1 + |f'(c)|) \frac{\epsilon}{1 + |f'(c)|} = \epsilon.$$

Consequently f is continuous at c . □

The converse of the theorem is not true, and the following example demonstrates this.

Example 5.2. The function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $f(x) = |x|$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$) is (uniformly) continuous since

$$|f(x) - f(y)| = \left| |x| - |y| \right| \leq |x - y|.$$

But let us now show that f is not differentiable at 0. If it were, then given an $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $0 < |x| < \delta$, we have

$$\left| \frac{|x|}{x} - f'(0) \right| < \epsilon.$$

In particular, if we take $x = \delta/2$, then we obtain $|1 - f'(0)| < \epsilon$. If we take $x = -\delta/2$, we also get $|-1 - f'(0)| < \epsilon$. As the choice of $\epsilon > 0$ was arbitrary, we obtain $|1 - f'(0)| \leq 0$ and $|-1 - f'(0)| \leq 0$. But this means that $f'(0) = 1$ and $f'(0) = -1$, and so $1 = -1$, a contradiction. ◇

One can show the following result about rules for differentiating the sum and product of differentiable functions.

Proposition 5.3. Let $f, g : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable at $c \in (a, b)$. Then:

- (1) The sum $f + g : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$ ($x \in (a, b)$) is differentiable at c , and $(f + g)'(c) = f'(c) + g'(c)$.
- (2) The product $fg : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $(fg)(x) = f(x) \cdot g(x)$ ($x \in (a, b)$) is differentiable at c , and $(fg)'(c) = f'(c)g(c) + f(c)g'(c)$.

Proof. These claims follow from the algebra of limits, namely Theorem 4.46. Indeed we have

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{(f+g)(x) - (f+g)(c)}{x-c} = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x-c} + \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{g(x) - g(c)}{x-c} = f'(c) + g'(c),$$

which proves (1). Also, (2) follows from the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{(fg)(x) - (fg)(c)}{x-c} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{f(x)g(x) - f(c)g(x) + f(c)g(x) - f(c)g(c)}{x-c} \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x-c} \cdot g(x) + \lim_{x \rightarrow c} f(c) \cdot \frac{g(x) - g(c)}{x-c} \\ &= \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x-c} \cdot \lim_{x \rightarrow c} g(x) + f(c) \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{g(x) - g(c)}{x-c} \\ &= f'(c)g(c) + f(c)g'(c). \end{aligned}$$

This completes the proof. \square

Example 5.4. The derivative of a constant function is clearly zero. It is also easy to see that if f is defined by $f(x) = x$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$), then $f'(x) = 1$. Repeated application of (2) above shows that the derivative of x^n ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) is nx^{n-1} . Thus every polynomial function is differentiable. \diamond

Henceforth, we will take for granted the standard results on differentiating elementary functions such as $\sin x$ that the student is familiar from ordinary calculus.

Exercise 5.5.

- (1) Show that if f, g are real valued differentiable functions on an open interval I , then $(fg)'(x) = f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x)$, $x \in I$.
- (2) Prove that if f, g are infinitely many times differentiable functions on an open interval I , then

$$(fg)^{(n)}(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} f^{(k)}(x)g^{(n-k)}(x), \quad x \in I.$$

- (3) For a real number x and n a nonnegative integer, define

$$x^{[n]} := x(x-1) \cdots (x-n+1).$$

$$\text{Show that if } x, y \in \mathbb{R}, (x+y)^{[n]} = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^{[k]} y^{[n-k]}.$$

Hint: Differentiate t^{x+y} n times with respect to $t \in I := (0, \infty)$.

5.1. Mean Value Theorem

We say that $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ has a *local minimum* at $c \in (a, b)$ if there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x \in (a, b)$ satisfies $|x - c| < \delta$, we have $f(x) \geq f(c)$. In other words, “locally” around c , the value assumed by f at c is the smallest. See Figure 3. Local maximizers are defined likewise.

Theorem 5.6. *Let $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be such that f has a local minimum at $c \in (a, b)$, and f is differentiable at c . Then $f'(c) = 0$.*

An analogous result holds for a local maximizer.

Proof. Let $\delta > 0$ be such that $a < c - \delta < c < c + \delta < b$ and $f(x) \geq f(c)$ for x satisfying $|x - c| < \delta$. Given an $\epsilon > 0$, we can also ensure (by making δ smaller if required) that for all x satisfying $0 < |x - c| < \delta$, we have

$$\left| \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} - f'(c) \right| < \epsilon.$$

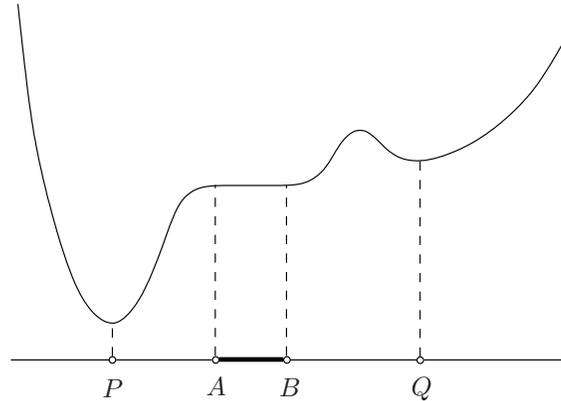


Figure 3. The points P , Q and all points in the interior of the line segment AB are all local minimizers.

Hence we have for all x satisfying $c < x < c + \delta$ that

$$0 - f'(c) \leq \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} - f'(c) \leq \left| \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} - f'(c) \right| < \epsilon.$$

(In order to obtain the first inequality, we have used the fact that $x - c > 0$ and $f(x) \geq f(c)$.)

Similarly, for x satisfying $c - \delta < x < c$, we have

$$0 + f'(c) \leq -\frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} + f'(c) \leq \left| \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} - f'(c) \right| < \epsilon.$$

Consequently, we have $|f'(c)| < \epsilon$. But the choice of $\epsilon > 0$ was arbitrary, and hence $f'(c) = 0$. \square

Theorem 5.7 (Mean-Value Theorem). *Let $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b) . Then there is a point $c \in (a, b)$ such that*

$$\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a} = f'(c).$$

The above result has a simple geometric interpretation. If we look at the chord AB in the plane which joins the end points $A \equiv (a, f(a))$ and $B \equiv (b, f(b))$ of the graph of f , then there is a point $c \in (a, b)$, where the tangent to f at the point $C \equiv (c, f(c))$ is parallel to the chord AB . See Figure 4.

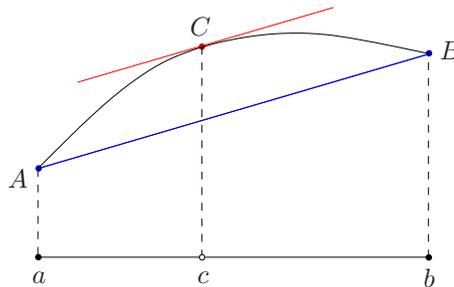


Figure 4. Geometric meaning of the Mean Value Theorem.

Proof of Theorem 5.7. Define $\varphi : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$\varphi(x) = (f(b) - f(a))x - (b - a)f(x), \quad x \in (a, b).$$

Then φ is continuous on $[a, b]$, differentiable on (a, b) and

$$\varphi(a) = (f(b) - f(a))a - (b - a)f(a) = f(b)a - bf(a) = (f(b) - f(a))b - (b - a)f(b) = \varphi(b).$$

Moreover, for $x \in (a, b)$, we have $\varphi'(x) = f(b) - f(a) - (b - a)f'(x)$, and so in order to prove the theorem, it suffices to show that $\varphi'(c) = 0$ for some $c \in (a, b)$.

If φ is constant, this holds for all $x \in (a, b)$. If $\varphi(x) < \varphi(a) = \varphi(b)$ for some $x \in (a, b)$, let c be a point in $[a, b]$ where φ attains its minimum (Extreme Value Theorem!). Then since $\varphi(b) = \varphi(a)$, we conclude that $c \in (a, b)$. By the necessary condition for a local minimizer, we have $\varphi'(c) = 0$. A similar argument applies if we choose for c a point on $[a, b]$ where φ attains its maximum. \square

Corollary 5.8 (Rolle's theorem). *Let $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b) . If $f(a) = f(b)$, then there exists $c \in (a, b)$ such that $f'(c) = 0$.*

Exercise 5.9 (Cauchy's theorem). *If $f, g : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b) , then show that there is a point $c \in (a, b)$ such that $(f(b) - f(a))g'(c) = (g(b) - g(a))f'(c)$.*

Hint: Apply Rolle's Theorem to φ given by $\varphi(x) = \det \begin{bmatrix} f(x) & g(x) & 1 \\ f(a) & g(a) & 1 \\ f(b) & g(b) & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ ($x \in [a, b]$).

Corollary 5.10. *Suppose that $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable on (a, b) . Then:*

- (1) *If $f'(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then f is increasing.*
- (2) *If $f'(x) = 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then f is constant.*
- (3) *If $f'(x) \leq 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then f is decreasing.*

Proof. For each pair of numbers $x_1, x_2 \in (a, b)$, by the Mean Value Theorem, we have

$$f(x_1) - f(x_2) = f'(x)(x_1 - x_2)$$

for some x between x_1 and x_2 . All the above conclusions can be read off from here. \square

The Mean Value Theorem can be used to prove interesting inequalities; here is an example.

Example 5.11. Let us show that for all $x > 0$, $\sqrt{1+x} < 1 + \frac{1}{2}x$.

Consider the function $f : [0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $f(x) = \sqrt{1+x}$. Then f is continuous on $[0, \infty)$ and differentiable on $(0, \infty)$. If $x > 0$, then applying the Mean Value Theorem to f on the interval $[0, x]$, we obtain the existence of a c such that $0 < c < x$ and

$$\frac{f(x) - f(0)}{x - 0} = \frac{\sqrt{1+x} - 1}{x} = f'(c) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{1+c}} < \frac{1}{2}.$$

Rearranging, we obtain the desired inequality. \diamond

If f has a derivative $f'(x)$ at each $x \in (a, b)$, then we can consider the *derivative function*, namely the map f' given by $x \mapsto f'(x)$ on the interval (a, b) . Suppose now that f' is itself differentiable on (a, b) . Then we may consider the derivative function f'' of f' . One can continue in this manner (provided of course that each successive function obtained is again differentiable), and obtain the functions

$$f', f'', f^{(3)}, \dots, f^{(n)},$$

each of which is the derivative of the previous one. $f^{(n)}$ is called the n th derivative, or the derivative of order n , of f .

Example 5.12. All polynomials have derivatives of all orders, and eventually all high order derivatives are the zero function. \diamond

Exercise 5.13. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be such that for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$, $|f(x) - f(y)| \leq (x - y)^2$. Prove that f is constant.

Exercise 5.14. Let $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable on (a, b) and suppose that there is number M such that for all $x \in (a, b)$, $|f'(x)| \leq M$. Show that f is uniformly continuous on (a, b) .

Exercise 5.15. Show that the cubic $2x^3 + 3x^2 + 6x + 10$ has exactly one real zero.

Exercise 5.16. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. We call $x \in \mathbb{R}$ a *fixed point* of f if $f(x) = x$.

- (1) If f is differentiable, and for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $f'(x) \neq 1$, then prove that f has at most one fixed point.
- (2) (*) Show that if there is an $M < 1$ such that for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $|f'(x)| \leq M$, then there is a fixed point x_* of f , and that $x_* = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n$, where x_1 is arbitrary and $x_{n+1} = f(x_n)$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$).
- (3) Visualize the process described in the part (2) above via the zig-zag path

$$(x_1, x_2) \longrightarrow (x_2, x_2) \longrightarrow (x_2, x_3) \longrightarrow (x_3, x_3) \longrightarrow (x_3, x_4) \longrightarrow \dots$$

- (4) Prove that the function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$f(x) = x + \frac{1}{1 + e^x} \quad (x \in \mathbb{R})$$

has no fixed point, although $0 < f'(x) < 1$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Is this a contradiction to the result in part (2) above? Explain.

Exercise 5.17. Consider the function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $f(0) = 0$ and for $x \neq 0$,

$$f(x) = x^2 \sin \frac{1}{x}.$$

Prove that f is differentiable, but f' is not continuous at 0.

Exercise 5.18. (*) Find all functions $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that f is differentiable on \mathbb{R} and for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$f'(x) = \frac{f(x+n) - f(x)}{n}.$$

Hint: Conclude that f must be twice differentiable and calculate $f''(x)$.

Exercise 5.19. Show that for every real $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, $|\cos a - \cos b| \leq |a - b|$.

Exercise 5.20. (*) A function $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is said to be *convex* if for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $t \in (0, 1)$, $f((1-t)x + ty) \leq (1-t)f(x) + tf(y)$.

- (1) Draw a picture and explain the geometric meaning of the inequality above.
- (2) Show that if f is twice differentiable, then f is convex if $f''(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$. *Hint:* If $x < y$, then apply the Mean Value Theorem for f on the interval $[x, (1-t)x + ty]$ and $[(1-t)x + ty, y]$.
- (3) Prove that if f is a differentiable and convex function, then f' is increasing. *Hint:* If $x < u < y$, then using the convexity, derive the inequalities

$$\frac{f(u) - f(x)}{u - x} \leq \frac{f(y) - f(x)}{y - x} \leq \frac{f(y) - f(u)}{y - u}.$$

and pass the limits $u \searrow x$ and $u \nearrow y$.

(Combining this result with the result in part (2), we conclude that a twice differentiable function is convex *if and only if* $f''(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.)

- (4) Prove that if f is a differentiable, convex function and $f'(x_0) = 0$ for a $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$, then x_0 is a minimizer of f .

Exercise 5.21. Prove that not all the zeros of the polynomial $x^4 - \sqrt{7}x^3 + 4x^2 - \sqrt{22}x + 15$ are real.

Hint: Repeated application of Rolle's Theorem.

5.2. Uniform convergence and differentiation

When we studied uniform convergence, we had mentioned that interchanging limits is facilitated by uniform convergence. An instance of this is the possibility of differentiating a uniformly convergent series termwise; as shown in the Corollary 5.23 below. This relies on the following result, which in turn is an application of the Mean Value Theorem.

Proposition 5.22. *Let $f_n : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) be a sequence of differentiable functions on (a, b) , such that there exists a point $c \in (a, b)$ for which $(f_n(c))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges. If the sequence $(f'_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly to g on (a, b) , then $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly to a differentiable function f on (a, b) , and moreover, $f'(x) = g(x)$ for all $x \in (a, b)$.*

Proof. (*) (You may skip reading this proof.) Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose $N_1 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $m, n > N_1$,

$$|f'_m(x) - f'_n(x)| < \min \left\{ \frac{\epsilon}{3}, \frac{\epsilon}{3(b-a)} \right\} \text{ and } |f_m(c) - f_n(c)| < \frac{\epsilon}{3}.$$

Let $x \in (a, b)$. Apply the Mean Value Theorem to the function $f_m - f_n$ on the interval with the endpoints x, c to get

$$f_m(x) - f_n(x) = f_m(c) - f_n(c) + (x - c)(f'_m(y) - f'_n(y))$$

for some y between x, c . Hence

$$|f_m(x) - f_n(x)| \leq |f_m(c) - f_n(c)| + (b - a)|f'_m(y) - f'_n(y)| < \frac{2}{3}\epsilon < \epsilon.$$

Consequently, $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is uniformly convergent on (a, b) . Let $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be its limit. As each f_n is continuous, so is f .

To show that f is differentiable at a point $x_0 \in (a, b)$, we apply the Mean Value Theorem once again to $f_m - f_n$ on the interval with endpoints x_0 and $x \in (a, b)$, $x \neq x_0$. We obtain

$$(f_m(x) - f_n(x)) - (f_m(x_0) - f_n(x_0)) = (x - x_0)(f'_m(y) - f'_n(y))$$

for some y between x and x_0 . Dividing by $x - x_0$ and taking absolute values, we get

$$\left| \frac{f_m(x) - f_m(x_0)}{x - x_0} - \frac{f_n(x) - f_n(x_0)}{x - x_0} \right| \leq |f'_m(y) - f'_n(y)| < \frac{\epsilon}{3}.$$

Passing the limit $m \rightarrow \infty$ yields

$$\left| \frac{f(x) - f(x_0)}{x - x_0} - \frac{f_n(x) - f_n(x_0)}{x - x_0} \right| \leq \frac{\epsilon}{3}.$$

Now choose $N_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $|f'_n(x_0) - g(x_0)| < \epsilon/3$ for all $n > N_2$. Let $N := \max\{N_1, N_2\}$ and choose $\delta > 0$ such that $0 < |x - x_0| < \delta$ implies

$$\left| \frac{f_N(x) - f_N(x_0)}{x - x_0} - f'_N(x_0) \right| < \frac{\epsilon}{3}.$$

Then combining these inequalities, we get for $0 < |x - x_0| < \delta$ that

$$\left| \frac{f(x) - f(x_0)}{x - x_0} - g(x_0) \right| < \epsilon.$$

As the choice of $\epsilon > 0$ was arbitrary, it follows that f is differentiable at x_0 and $f'(x_0) = g(x_0)$. \square

Corollary 5.23. *Let $f_n : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$, be a sequence of differentiable functions such that*

$$(1) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n(c) \text{ converges for some } c \in (a, b), \text{ and}$$

$$(2) g := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f'_n \text{ is uniformly convergent on } (a, b).$$

Then $f := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n$ is uniformly convergent on (a, b) and $f' = g$ on (a, b) .

Example 5.24. We will show that the exponential function $f(x) := e^x$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$) satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dx}f(x) = f(x) \quad (x \in \mathbb{R}).$$

We have

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} \frac{d}{dx} x^n = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} n x^{n-1} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n-1)!} x^{n-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} x^n$$

converges uniformly on each bounded interval. Thus, by Corollary 5.23, we obtain $f'(x) = f(x)$ as required. \diamond

Exercise 5.25. (*) What is the sum of the series $1 + 2x + 3x^2 + 4x^3 + \dots$ for $x \in (-1, 1)$?

5.3. Derivative of maps from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R}^m

In order to differentiate functions whose domain is \mathbb{R}^n (or an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n) and takes values in \mathbb{R}^m , let us take another look at the familiar case when $n = m = 1$, and let us recast the old definition in a manner that will naturally lend itself for extension to the case when n or m is > 1 .

We have defined $f : (a, b) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ to be differentiable at $c \in (a, b)$ if

$$f'(c) := \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c}$$

exists. Or equivalently,

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \left| \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} - f'(c) \right| = 0.$$

This implies that the “remainder”

$$r(x) := f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x - c)$$

is small, in the sense that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{|r(x)|}{|x - c|} = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{|f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x - c)|}{|x - c|} = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \left| \frac{f(x) - f(c)}{x - c} - f'(c) \right| = 0.$$

Now consider the linear transformation $L : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$L(h) = f'(c)h \quad (h \in \mathbb{R}).$$

Then we can write the remainder term as

$$r(x) = f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x - c) = f(x) - f(c) - L(x - c),$$

and we see that $r(x)$ measures how different $f(x) - f(c)$ is from the action of the linear transformation L on $x - c$. So we may view the number $f'(c)$ as describing a linear transformation L so that the remainder r defined by $r(x) := f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x - c)$ has the property that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{|r(x)|}{|x - c|} = 0.$$

This motivates the following definition.

Definition 5.26. Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ be open, $c \in U$ and $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$. Then we say that f is *differentiable at c* if there exists a linear transformation $L : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ such that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{\|f(x) - f(c) - L(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} = 0, \quad (5.1)$$

that is, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x \in U$ satisfies $0 < \|x - c\|_2 < \delta$, there holds that

$$\frac{\|f(x) - f(c) - L(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} < \epsilon.$$

Then L is called the *derivative of f at c* , and we write $f'(c) = L$.

The relation (5.1) can be expressed by saying that

$$f(x) - f(c) = f'(c)(x - c) + r(x),$$

where the remainder r satisfies

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{\|r(x)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} = 0.$$

So we can interpret this as saying that $f'(c)$ is that linear transformation which has the property that for x close to c , $f(x) - f(c)$ is approximately equal to its action on $x - c$. Next we show that in fact there can be only one such linear transformation.

Lemma 5.27. *Let $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ be open, $c \in U$ and $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ be differentiable at c . Then the derivative of f at c is unique.*

Proof. Suppose that L_1, L_2 are two linear transformations such that

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{\|f(x) - f(c) - L_1(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} = 0 = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{\|f(x) - f(c) - L_2(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2}.$$

Thus given $\epsilon > 0$, we can choose a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $0 < \|x - c\|_2 < \delta$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\|f(x) - f(c) - L_1(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} &< \epsilon, \\ \frac{\|f(x) - f(c) - L_2(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} &< \epsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Hence by the triangle inequality, it follows for whenever $0 < \|x - c\|_2 < \delta$,

$$\frac{\|L_2(x - c) - L_1(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} < 2\epsilon,$$

that is, $\|L_2(x - c) - L_1(x - c)\|_2 \leq 2\epsilon\|x - c\|_2$. Now given any nonzero $h \in \mathbb{R}^n$, define

$$x = c + \frac{\delta}{2\|h\|_2}h.$$

Then $0 < \|x - c\|_2 = \delta/2 < \delta$, and so $\|L_2h - L_1h\|_2 \leq 2\epsilon\|h\|_2$. But the choice of $\epsilon > 0$ was arbitrary, and so $L_2h = L_1h$ for all nonzero $h \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Thus $L_1 = L_2$. \square

Example 5.28. Let $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$. Consider the map $T_A : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ given by $T_Ax = Ax$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}^n$). If $c \in \mathbb{R}^n$, then is T_A differentiable at c ? If so, then what is its derivative? The answers turn out to be very simple. We note that for $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we have

$$T_A(x) - T_A(c) = T_A(x - c),$$

and so

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{\|T_A(x) - T_A(c) - T_A(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} \frac{0}{\|x - c\|_2} = \lim_{x \rightarrow c} 0 = 0.$$

So T_A is differentiable at $c \in \mathbb{R}^n$, and $T'_A(c) = T_A!$ \diamond

Exercise 5.29. (*) Let $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable at $c \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Show that the new function $g : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, defined by

$$g(x) := (f(x))^2 \quad (x \in \mathbb{R}^n)$$

is also differentiable at c . *Hint:* $(f(x))^2 - (f(c))^2 = (f(x) + f(c))(f(x) - f(c)) \approx 2f(c)f'(c)(x - c)$ for x near c .

Exercise 5.30. Let $Q \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ be a symmetric matrix, that is, $Q = Q^\top$. Define $q : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $q(x) = x^\top Qx$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}^n$). Prove that q is differentiable at each $c \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and that $q'(c) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is given by $q'(c)v = 2c^\top Qv$ ($v \in \mathbb{R}^n$).

Exercise 5.31. Consider the map $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by

$$f(x) = \|x\|_2^4 \quad (x \in \mathbb{R}^n).$$

Calculate $f'(c)$ for $c \in \mathbb{R}^n$. *Hint:* Use the results in Exercises 5.29 and 5.30.

5.4. Partial derivatives

Suppose that U is an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n , and let $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ be a function. Let the components of f be denoted by f_1, \dots, f_m . Thus for $i = 1, \dots, m$,

$$f_i(x) := e_i^\top f(x) \quad (x \in U),$$

where e_1, \dots, e_m denote the standard basis vectors in \mathbb{R}^m , that is,

$$e_1 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \dots, e_m := \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Let $c \in U$. If

$$\frac{\partial f_i}{\partial x_j}(c) := \lim_{x_j \rightarrow c_j} \frac{f_i(c_1, \dots, c_{j-1}, x_j, c_{j+1}, \dots, c_n) - f_i(c_1, \dots, c_{j-1}, c_j, c_{j+1}, \dots, c_n)}{x_j - c_j}$$

exists, then we call $\frac{\partial f_i}{\partial x_j}(c)$ the (i, j) th partial derivative of f at c . Thus, we look only at the i th component $f_i : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, keep all the variables $x_1, \dots, x_{j-1}, x_{j+1}, \dots, x_n$ as fixed, with values $c_1, \dots, c_{j-1}, c_{j+1}, \dots, c_n$, respectively, and differentiate the function

$$x_j \mapsto f_i(c_1, \dots, c_{j-1}, x_j, c_{j+1}, \dots, c_n)$$

with respect to x_j at c_j .

Example 5.32. Let $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ be defined by

$$f(x_1, x_2) = \begin{bmatrix} x_1^2 + x_2^2 \\ x_1 x_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_1}(c_1, c_2) &= 2c_1, & \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_2}(c_1, c_2) &= 2c_2, \\ \frac{\partial f_2}{\partial x_1}(c_1, c_2) &= c_2, & \frac{\partial f_2}{\partial x_2}(c_1, c_2) &= c_1. \end{aligned}$$

◇

Theorem 5.33. Let U be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n , and $c \in U$. If $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ is differentiable at c , then all the partial derivatives of f at c , namely,

$$\frac{\partial f_i}{\partial x_j}(c) \quad (i = 1, \dots, m; j = 1, \dots, n)$$

exist, and the matrix $[f'(c)]$ of the linear transformation $f'(c)$ with respect to the standard bases for \mathbb{R}^n and \mathbb{R}^m is given by

$$[f'(c)] = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_1}(c) & \dots & \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_n}(c) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_1}(c) & \dots & \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_n}(c) \end{bmatrix}.$$

Proof. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then since f is differentiable at c , there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x \in U$ such that $0 < \|x - c\|_2 < \delta$, we have

$$\frac{\|f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} < \epsilon.$$

Let x_j be such that $0 < |x_j - c_j| < \delta$. Define

$$x := (c_1, \dots, c_{j-1}, x_j, c_{j+1}, \dots, c_n).$$

Then $x - c = (0, \dots, 0, x_j - c, 0, \dots, 0) = (x_j - c)e_j$, and so $\|x - c\|_2 = |x_j - c|$. Consequently, for these x 's,

$$\frac{\|f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x - c)\|_2}{\|x - c\|_2} < \epsilon.$$

Moreover, $f_i(x) - f_i(c) - (e_i^\top [f'(c)]e_j)(x_j - c_j) = e_i^\top (f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x - c))$, and so

$$|f_i(x) - f_i(c) - (e_i^\top [f'(c)]e_j)(x_j - c_j)| \leq \|f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x - c)\|_2.$$

Hence for x_j 's satisfying $0 < |x_j - c_j| < \delta$, we have

$$\left| \frac{f_i(c_1, \dots, c_{j-1}, x_j, c_{j+1}, \dots, c_n) - f_i(c_1, \dots, c_{j-1}, c_j, c_{j+1}, \dots, c_n)}{x_j - c_j} - e_i^\top [f'(c)]e_j \right| < \epsilon.$$

This completes the proof. \square



The above result says that for the derivative to exist, it is necessary that the partial derivatives exist. Surprisingly, this is not a sufficient condition.

Example 5.34. Let $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by $f(0, 0) = 0$ and for $(x_1, x_2) \neq (0, 0)$,

$$f(x_1, x_2) = \frac{x_1 x_2}{x_1^2 + x_2^2}.$$

We will show that although $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}(0, 0)$ and $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}(0, 0)$ exist, $f'(0, 0)$ doesn't, that is, f is not differentiable at $(0, 0)$.

For $x_1 \neq 0$, we have $f(x_1, 0) - f(0, 0) = 0 - 0 = 0$, and so

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}(0, 0) = \lim_{x_1 \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_1, 0) - f(0, 0)}{x_1 - 0} = \lim_{x_1 \rightarrow 0} 0 = 0.$$

Similarly, $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}(0, 0) = 0$.

Thus all the partial derivatives of f exist at $(0, 0)$. However, we will now show that $f'(0, 0)$ does not exist. Suppose that $f'(0, 0)$ does exist. Then by Theorem 5.33,

$$[f'(0, 0)] = \left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}(0, 0) \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}(0, 0) \right] = [0 \quad 0].$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$ satisfying $0 < \|x - 0\|_2 < \delta$, we have

$$\frac{\|f(x) - f(0) - f'(0)(x - 0)\|_2}{\|x - 0\|_2} < \epsilon,$$

that is,

$$\frac{|x_1 x_2|}{(x_1^2 + x_2^2)\sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2}} < \epsilon.$$

For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ large enough, with $x_1 := x_2 := 1/n$, we have that $0 < \|(x_1, x_2) - (0, 0)\|_2 = \sqrt{2}/n < \delta$, and so there must hold

$$\frac{n}{2\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\frac{1}{n^2}}{\frac{2}{n^2} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{n}} = \frac{|x_1 x_2|}{(x_1^2 + x_2^2)\sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2}} < \epsilon,$$

for all large n , a contradiction. \diamond

Let U be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n . We say that $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ has a *local minimum* at $c \in U$ if there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x \in U$ satisfies $\|x - c\|_2 < \delta$, we have $f(x) \geq f(c)$. Local maximizers are defined analogously.

Corollary 5.35. *Let U be an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n . Let $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be such that f has a local minimum at $c \in U$, and f is differentiable at c . Then $f'(c) = 0$.*

Proof. It is clear that if c is a local minimizer for f , then each of the functions

$$x_i \mapsto f(c_1, \dots, c_{i-1}, x_i, c_{i+1}, \dots, c_n)$$

has a local minimum at c_i , and so by the one variable result, we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(c) = 0$$

for each $i = 1, \dots, m$. Consequently, Theorem 5.33 yields $f'(c) = 0$. \square

An analogous result holds for a local maximizer.

Exercise 5.36. Let τ, ξ be real numbers such that $\tau - \xi^2 = 0$. Show that $f(x, t) := e^{\tau t + \xi x}$, $x, t \in (0, \infty)$, satisfies the diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(x, t) - \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}(x, t) = 0.$$

(Here $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}$ is used to denote the partial derivative with respect to x of the map $(x, t) \mapsto \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, t)$.)

Exercise 5.37. In the subject of ‘‘Calculus of Variations’’, the following type of optimization problem is studied:

$$\text{minimize } f(x) := \int_a^b F(x(t), x'(t), t) dt$$

where the integrand in the cost function is described by a function $F : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ of three real variables (α, β, γ) taking values in \mathbb{R}^3 :

$$(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \in (\mathbb{R}^3) \quad \mapsto \quad F(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \in (\mathbb{R}),$$

and the (variable) function $x : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is such that $x(a) = y_a$ and $x(b) = y_b$. Hence we observe that this is an optimization problem in which the domain of the cost function is itself a set of functions. Figure 5 illustrates this.

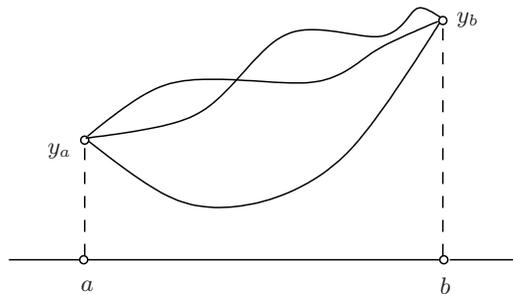


Figure 5. Possible x s.

The fundamental result in Calculus of Variations is that if x_* is an optimal solution to this problem, then it must satisfy the following ‘‘Euler-Lagrange equation’’:

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial \alpha}(x(t), x'(t), t) - \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial \beta}(x(t), x'(t), t) \right) = 0 \quad (t \in [a, b]).$$

Consider for example the following optimization problem which occurs in resource management. One wants to maximize the profit

$$f(x) := \int_0^T (P - ax(t) - bx'(t))x'(t) dt$$

associated with a possible choice of operation $x : [0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ over the time interval $[0, T]$ satisfying $x(0) = 0$ and $x(T) = Q$. Here T, P, a, b, Q are given positive constants. Assuming that an optimal operation x_* exists, find it using the Euler-Lagrange equation.

Exercise 5.38. (*) Find all (global) minimizers of $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $f(x_1, x_2) = x_1^4 - 12x_1x_2 + x_2^4$, $(x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$.

Exercise 5.39. Verify that

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(x, y) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(x, y) \quad (5.2)$$

for all $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$, where the function f is given by

$$f(x, y) = 3x^3 + 9y^2 - 9x^3y \quad ((x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2).$$

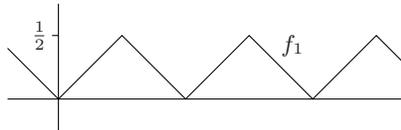
Show that (5.2) does not hold at $(0, 0)$ if f is given by

$$f(x, y) = \begin{cases} xy \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2} & \text{if } (x, y) \neq (0, 0), \\ 0 & \text{if } (x, y) = (0, 0). \end{cases}$$

Exercise 5.40. Find the derivative of the multiplication map $(x, y) \mapsto xy : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ at (x_0, y_0) in \mathbb{R}^2 .

5.5. Notes (not part of the course)

In connection with Theorem 5.1, we might wonder how badly behaved continuous functions might be with respect to the notion of differentiability. It turns out that there are functions that are continuous *everywhere*, but differentiable *nowhere*. One construction is that of the so-called *blancmange function* obtained by taking the basic *sawtooth function* f_1 ,



and constructing f_2, f_3, \dots by setting

$$\begin{aligned} f_2(x) &= \frac{1}{2} f_1(2x), \\ f_3(x) &= \frac{1}{4} f_1(4x), \\ f_4(x) &= \frac{1}{8} f_1(8x), \\ &\vdots \\ f_n(x) &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} f_1(2^{n-1}x), \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

and adding these:

$$b(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n(x), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Then it can be shown that b is continuous on \mathbb{R} , but not differentiable at any $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

We have seen in Example 5.34 that even though all the partial derivatives exist at a point, the function may not be differentiable at that point. However, the following result says that if the partial derivatives are *continuous* in a neighbourhood of the point, then the function is differentiable in that neighbourhood. Here is the precise statement of the result, a proof of which can be found in Rudin [R].

Theorem 5.41. *Suppose that f maps an open set $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ into \mathbb{R}^m . If all the partial derivatives*

$$\frac{\partial f_i}{\partial x_j}(x) \quad (i = 1, \dots, m; j = 1, \dots, n)$$

exist at each $x \in U$ and the maps

$$x \mapsto \frac{\partial f_i}{\partial x_j}(x) : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R} \quad (i = 1, \dots, m; j = 1, \dots, n)$$

are continuous on U , then f is continuously differentiable on U .

(In the above the phrase “continuously differentiable on U ” means that at each $x \in U$, $f'(x)$ exists and the map $x \mapsto f'(x) : U \rightarrow \mathcal{L}(\mathbb{R}^n; \mathbb{R}^m)$ is continuous on U . Here $\mathcal{L}(\mathbb{R}^n; \mathbb{R}^m)$ denotes the set of all linear transformations from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R}^m .)

Also, in Exercise 5.39, we saw a real function for which the order of taking partial derivatives mattered. The following result gives a sufficient condition for it to be irrelevant.

Theorem 5.42. *If $U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and $f : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is twice continuously differentiable (that is, $f''(x)$ exists at each $x \in U$ and the map $x \mapsto f''(x)$ is continuous on U), then*

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j}(x) = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_j \partial x_i}(x) \quad (1 \leq i, j \leq n, x \in U).$$

Chapter 6

Epilogue: integration

One traditional topic in real analysis that we haven't covered yet in these notes is Integration Theory. There are two important types of integrals: Riemann integration and Lebesgue integration. Riemann integration will be covered in the course MA212 *Further Mathematical Methods*, and it has the advantage that it is intuitive and easy to follow. However, it turns out that it is not amenable to certain natural limiting processes. For example, it turns out that the functional analogue of the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^n , namely the space $C[a, b]$ equipped with the following norm

$$\|f\|_2 := \sqrt{\int_a^b |f(x)|^2 dx} \quad (f \in C[a, b])$$

is not complete, which turns out to be awkward when one wants to deal with applications. However, one can introduce a more general integral called the Lebesgue integral, which rescues this situation. The interested reader is referred to the book by Rudin [R] for these matters. However, in this last chapter, we study the foundations of Riemann integration in the case of a function $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. We study the definition, elementary properties and finish with establishing the Fundamental Theorem of Integral Calculus.

6.1. Motivation and definition

It is a basic problem in geometry to calculate the area under a curve, which arises from concrete practical applications.

Given a “nice” function $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, determine the area under the graph of f . Pictorially, find the area of the shaded region in Figure 1.

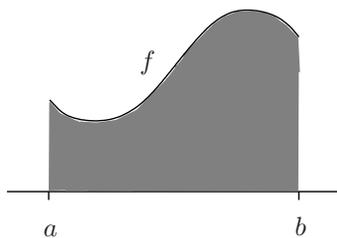


Figure 1. What is the area under the graph of f ?

Of course if the function were a simple function, like a constant function taking value c everywhere, it would be easy to calculate the area. See Figure 2.

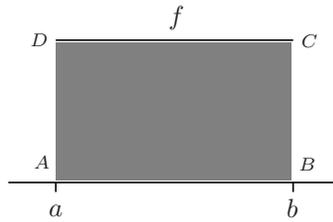


Figure 2. Area under the graph of f is $c \cdot (b - a)$.

Indeed it would just be the area of the rectangle $ABCD$, that is,

$$f(a) \cdot (b - a) = f(b) \cdot (b - a) = c \cdot (b - a).$$

But how do we define the area in the case when f is not constant and the graph of f has a shape which curves? Well, if there were numbers m, M such that $m \leq f(x) \leq M$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, surely we must have that the area under the graph of f , say $A(f)$, is flanked by the areas of the two rectangles $ABCD$ and $ABC'D'$, as shown in Figure 3, that is,

$$m \cdot (b - a) \leq A(f) \leq M \cdot (b - a).$$

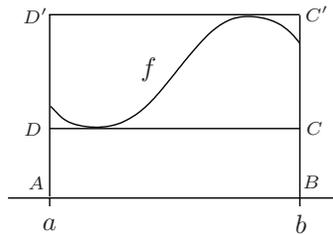


Figure 3. Bounds/estimates for the area under the graph of f .

This gives us the idea that we can estimate the area $A(f)$ by breaking it into little rectangles; see Figure 4.

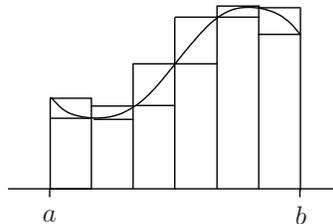


Figure 4. Calculation of the area under the graph of f .

In order to make this rigorous, we introduce the notion of a *partition* and that of *upper/lower sum* associated with a partition and a *bounded* function $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

Definition 6.1 (Partition). A partition P of $[a, b]$ is a finite set $P = \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n\}$ such that $a = x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_{n-1} < x_n = b$. The set of all partitions P of $[a, b]$ will be denoted by \mathcal{P} .

Definition 6.2 (Upper/lower sum). Let $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a bounded function and let P be a partition of $[a, b]$.

The *upper sum* $U(f, P)$ of f associated with P is defined to be

$$U(f, P) := \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \cdot (x_{k+1} - x_k).$$

(In other words, it is the area of a rectangle with the segment $[x_k, x_{k+1}]$ as the base and which is the shortest rectangle which contains the graph of the function f in the interval $[x_k, x_{k+1}]$.)

The *lower sum* $L(f, P)$ of f associated with P is defined to be

$$L(f, P) := \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\inf_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \cdot (x_{k+1} - x_k).$$

(In other words, it is the area of a rectangle with the segment $[x_k, x_{k+1}]$ as the base and which is the tallest rectangle which is contained in the region under the graph of the function f in the interval $[x_k, x_{k+1}]$.)

Clearly we expect that the actual area $A(f)$ is bounded above by *any* upper sum, and hence by the infimum of all upper sums. Similarly, $A(f)$ is bounded below by *any* lower sum, and hence by the supremum of all lower sums. Thus we expect that

$$\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) \leq A(f) \leq \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P).$$

Of course as the partitions get finer, we expect that for a nice function f the two bound get close to each other, since they both approximate $A(f)$ rather well. This motivates the following definition.

Exercise 6.3.

- (1) Show that for any bounded function $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, and any partitions P, P' of $[a, b]$, there holds that $U(f, P) \geq L(f, P')$.

Hint: Consider a “refinement” partition that contains both the partitions P and P' .

- (2) Prove that $\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) \geq \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P)$.

Definition 6.4. A bounded function $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is called *Riemann integrable* if

$$\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) = \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P).$$

We denote the common value by $\int_a^b f(x) dx$, and call it the *Riemann integral* of f .

Here is an example of a Riemann integrable function.

Example 6.5. Consider the bounded function $f : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ given by $f(x) = x^2$, $x \in [0, 1]$. We will show that f is Riemann integrable and that

$$\int_0^1 f(x) dx = \frac{1}{3}.$$

Rather than considering all partitions, it turns out that one can be somewhat more efficient by just considering the special partitions

$$P_* := \left\{ 0, \frac{1}{n}, \frac{2}{n}, \frac{3}{n}, \dots, \frac{n-1}{n}, 1 \right\},$$

which will be used to prove our claim. Clearly,

$$U(f, P_*) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\frac{k+1}{n} \right)^2 \frac{1}{n} = \frac{1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2}{n^3} = \frac{n \cdot (n+1) \cdot (2n+1)}{6n^3} = \frac{(1 + \frac{1}{n})(2 + \frac{1}{n})}{6}.$$

Thus,

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) \leq \inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}} U(f, P_*) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(1 + \frac{1}{n})(2 + \frac{1}{n})}{6} = \frac{1}{3}.$$

Similarly,

$$L(f, P_*) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\frac{k}{n}\right)^2 \frac{1}{n} = \frac{1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + (n-1)^2}{n^3} = \frac{(1 - \frac{1}{n})(2 - \frac{1}{n})}{6}.$$

Hence,

$$\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) \geq \sup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} L(f, P_*) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(1 - \frac{1}{n})(2 - \frac{1}{n})}{6} = \frac{1}{3}.$$

But these estimates yield that

$$\frac{1}{3} \geq \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) \geq \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) \geq \frac{1}{3},$$

showing that

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) = \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) = \frac{1}{3}.$$

Hence f is Riemann integrable and $\int_0^1 f(x)dx = \frac{1}{3}$. ◇

Here is an example of a function that is *not* Riemann integrable.

Example 6.6. Consider the indicator function f of rationals in $[0, 1]$, that is, $f : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x \in \mathbb{Q}, \\ 0 & \text{if } x \notin \mathbb{Q}, \end{cases} \quad (x \in [0, 1]).$$

Clearly f is bounded by 1. We will show that

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) = 1 > \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) = 0,$$

showing that f is not Riemann integrable.

Consider any partition $P = \{0, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}, 1\}$ of $[0, 1]$. Then each subinterval $[x_k, x_{k+1}]$ contains a rational number α_k and an irrational number β_k , and so

$$\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \geq f(\alpha_k) = 1 \text{ and } \inf_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \leq f(\beta_k) = 0.$$

Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned} U(f, P) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \cdot (x_{k+1} - x_k) \geq \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 1 \cdot (x_{k+1} - x_k) \\ &= (x_1 - x_0) + (x_2 - x_1) + \cdots + (x_n - x_{n-1}) = x_n - x_0 = 1 - 0 = 1. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$L(f, P) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\inf_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \cdot (x_{k+1} - x_k) \leq \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 0 \cdot (x_{k+1} - x_k) = 0.$$

Thus,

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) \geq 1 > 0 \geq \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P).$$

Hence f is not Riemann integrable. ◇

All continuous functions are Riemann integrable.

Theorem 6.7. All functions continuous on $[a, b]$ are Riemann integrable.

Proof. We know that $[a, b]$ is compact, and so the continuity of f implies that f is bounded and also uniformly continuous. Given any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x, y \in [a, b]$ are such that $|x - y| < \delta$, we have $|f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon$. Consider any partition $P_* = \{a, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}, b\}$ such that $\max_{k=0, \dots, n-1} |x_{k+1} - x_k| < \delta$. Then

$$U(f, P_*) - L(f, P_*) = \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) - \inf_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) (x_{k+1} - x_k) \leq \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \epsilon (x_{k+1} - x_k) = \epsilon(b-a).$$

Thus

$$0 \leq \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) - \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) \leq \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) - L(f, P_*) \leq U(f, P_*) - L(f, P_*) \leq \epsilon(b-a).$$

As the choice of $\epsilon > 0$ was arbitrary, it follows that

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) = \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P),$$

and so f is Riemann integrable. □

One can show that the Riemann integral has the following elementary properties, which are left as an exercise to the student.

Exercise 6.8. (*) Let f, g be Riemann integrable on $[a, b]$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$. Then the following hold:

- (1) $\int_a^b f(x) + g(x) dx = \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx.$
- (2) $\int_a^b \alpha \cdot f(x) dx = \alpha \int_a^b f(x) dx.$
- (3) If for all $x \in [a, b]$, $f(x) \geq 0$, $\int_a^b f(x) dx \geq 0.$
- (4) If for all $x \in [a, b]$, $f(x) \leq g(x)$, then $\int_a^b f(x) dx \leq \int_a^b g(x) dx.$
- (5) $|f|$ is also Riemann integrable and $\left| \int_a^b f(x) dx \right| \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx.$
- (6) If f is continuous and nonnegative on $[a, b]$ and $\int_a^b f(x) dx = 0$, then f is identically equal to 0.

6.2. Fundamental theorem of integral calculus

We will now prove the following result.

Theorem 6.9. Let $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be continuously differentiable on $[a, b]$. Then

$$\int_a^b f'(x) dx = f(b) - f(a).$$

Proof. f' is continuous on $[a, b]$ and so uniformly continuous there. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $x, y \in [a, b]$ are such that $|x - y| < \delta$, we have $|f'(x) - f'(y)| < \epsilon$. Consider any partition $P_* = \{x_0 = a, x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n = b\}$ with

$$\max_{k=0, 1, \dots, n} (x_{k+1} - x_k) < \delta.$$

By the Mean Value Theorem, for each $k = 0, \dots, n-1$, there is a $c_k \in (x_k, x_{k+1})$ such that

$$\frac{f(x_{k+1}) - f(x_k)}{x_{k+1} - x_k} = f'(c_k).$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 U(f, P_*) - (f(b) - f(a)) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f'(x) \right) (x_{k+1} - x_k) - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (f(x_{k+1}) - f(x_k)) \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f'(x) - f'(c_k) \right) (x_{k+1} - x_k) \quad (\text{note this is } \geq 0) \\
 &\leq \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \epsilon (x_{k+1} - x_k) = \epsilon(b - a).
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}
 (f(b) - f(a)) - L(f, P_*) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(f'(c_k) - \inf_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f'(x) \right) (x_{k+1} - x_k) \quad (\text{note this is } \geq 0) \\
 &\leq \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \epsilon (x_{k+1} - x_k) = \epsilon(b - a).
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\int_a^b f'(x) dx - (f(b) - f(a)) = \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) - (f(b) - f(a)) \leq U(f, P_*) - (f(b) - f(a)) \leq \epsilon(b - a),$$

and

$$\int_a^b f'(x) dx - (f(b) - f(a)) = \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) - (f(b) - f(a)) \geq L(f, P_*) - (f(b) - f(a)) \geq -\epsilon(b - a).$$

Consequently, $\left| \int_a^b f'(x) dx - (f(b) - f(a)) \right| \leq \epsilon(b - a)$. As the choice of $\epsilon > 0$ was arbitrary, it follows that

$$\int_a^b f'(x) dx = f(b) - f(a).$$

This completes the proof. □

Exercise 6.10. Redo Example 6.5 using the Fundamental Theorem of Integral Calculus and the fact that $\frac{d}{dx} \frac{1}{3} x^3 = x^2$.

Bibliography

- [B1] K.G. Binmore. *The Foundations of Analysis: a Straightforward Introduction. Book 1. Logic, Sets and Numbers*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge-New York, 1980.
(This book is an informal introduction to logic and set theory. As the title suggests, the properties of the real numbers are emphasized in order to prepare the student for courses in analysis. Examples, exercises, and diagrams are abundant.)
- [B2] K.G. Binmore. *The Foundations of Analysis: a Straightforward Introduction. Book 2. Topological Ideas*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge-New York, 1981.
(This is a leisurely introduction to the basic notions of analysis. Clear motivation is provided for the results to follow.)
- [R] W. Rudin. *Principles of Mathematical Analysis*. Third edition. McGraw-Hill, Singapore, 1976.
(This book is tough to read, but having ploughed through it, with the exercises, gives a solid foundation.)
- [S] G.E. Shilov. *Elementary Real and Complex Analysis*. Revised English edition translated from the Russian and edited by Richard A. Silverman. Corrected reprint of the 1973 English edition. Dover Publications, Mineola, NY, 1996.
(This book is easier to read than Rudin's book, and offers the reader a leisurely but systematic introduction to Analysis. The Dover edition is affordable.)

Index

- $B(x, r)$, 6
- $C[a, b]$, 5
- $GL(m, \mathbb{R})$, 27
- $O(m, \mathbb{R})$, 27
- ℓ^2 , 6
- \mathbb{S}^2 , 9
- p -adic metric, 6

- absolute convergence, 33, 42
- alternating series, 33
- Archimedean property, 9

- blancmange function, 73
- Bolzano-Weierstrass theorem, 13
- bounded set, 24

- calculus of variations, 72
- Cantor set, 26
- Cauchy sequence, 13, 17
- Cauchy's Theorem, 65
- Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, 3, 4
- closed set, 8
- compact set, 24, 27
- comparison test, 34
- complete metric space, 17
- composition of functions, 47
- continuity at a point, 47, 49
- continuous function, 47, 49
- convergent sequence, 13, 16
- convergent series, 29, 42
- convex function, 66
- convex set, 9

- dense set, 9
- diffusion equation, 72
- discrete metric, 3
- distance function, 2
- divergent series, 29, 42

- equivalent norms, 58
- Erdős conjecture on APs, 44
- Euclidean metric, 3
- Euclidean space, 3
- Euler-Lagrange equation, 72
- exponential series, 36
- exponential series (matrix case), 43

- fixed point, 58, 66

- Fourier series, 37

- general linear group, 27
- geometric series, 30
- Green-Tao Theorem, 45

- Hamming distance, 6
- harmonic series, 31
- homeomorphic spaces, 52

- image of a set, 50
- induced distance, 5
- induced metric, 6
- infinite radius of convergence, 39
- inverse image of a set, 50

- lacunary series, 32
- limit of a function, 56
- linear Programming simplex, 9
- Lipschitz function, 60

- manifold, 53
- Mean Value Theorem, 64
- metric, 2
- metric space, 2
- metric subspace, 6

- norm, 4
- normed space, 4

- open ball, 6
- open cover, 27
- open interval, 7
- open map, 54
- open set, 7, 10

- partial derivative, 70
- partial sums, 29
- partial sums of a series, 29, 42
- path component, 50
- path connected set, 50
- periodic function, 37
- pointwise convergence, 20
- power series, 39

- radius of convergence, 39
- ratio test, 35
- restriction, 54
- Riemann-Zeta function, 31

Rolle's Theorem, 65

root test, 36

sawtooth function, 73

subcover, 27

subspace metric, 6

Taylor series, 37

topological space, 10

Topology, 10

topology, 10

triangle inequality, 2, 4, 5

uniform continuity, 59

uniform convergence, 20

unit sphere, 9

Weierstrass's theorem, 57

Solutions

Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 1

Solution to Exercise 1.7.

(D1) As $d(x, y)$ is either 0 or 1 for all $x, y \in X$, clearly $d(x, y) \geq 0$.

Also, for all $x \in X$, $d(x, x) = 0$ by definition.

If $x, y \in X$ and $x \neq y$, then $d(x, y) = 1 \neq 0$. So if $d(x, y) = 0$, then $x = y$.

(D2) If $x = y \in X$, then $d(x, y) = 0 = d(y, x)$. If $x, y \in X$ and $x \neq y$, then $d(x, y) = 1 = d(y, x)$.

(D3) Let $x, y, z \in X$. If $x = y$ and $y = z$, then $x = z$ and so clearly

$$d(x, z) = 0 \leq 0 + 0 = d(x, y) + d(y, z).$$

If either $x \neq y$ or $y \neq z$, then $d(x, y) = 1$ or $d(y, z) = 1$, and so $d(x, y) + d(y, z) \geq 1 + 0 = 1 \geq d(x, z)$.

Solution to Exercise 1.8. We have $f(t) = \underbrace{(y^\top y)}_{=:a} t^2 + \underbrace{(2x^\top y)}_{=:b} t + \underbrace{x^\top x}_{=:c}$.

The discriminant of f is $D = b^2 - 4ac = (2x^\top y)^2 - 4(y^\top y)(x^\top x) = 4\left((x^\top y)^2 - (y^\top y)(x^\top x)\right)$.

Thus $D \leq 0$ yields $(x^\top y)^2 = \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i\right)^2 \leq \left(\sum_{i=1}^n y_i^2\right) \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2\right) = (y^\top y)(x^\top x)$.

Solution to Exercise 1.11.

(D1) $d(x, y) = \|x - y\| \stackrel{N1}{\geq} 0$.

$$d(x, x) = \|x - x\| = \|\mathbf{0}\| = \|0 \cdot \mathbf{0}\| \stackrel{N2}{=} |0| \cdot \|\mathbf{0}\| = 0.$$

If $d(x, y) = 0$, then $\|x - y\| = 0 \stackrel{N1}{\implies} x = y$.

(D2) $d(x, y) = \|x - y\| = \|(-1)(y - x)\| \stackrel{N2}{=} |-1| \cdot \|y - x\| = \|y - x\| = d(y, x)$.

(D3) $d(x, z) = \|x - z\| = \|x - y + y - z\| \stackrel{N3}{\leq} \|x - y\| + \|y - z\| = d(x, y) + d(y, z)$.

Solution to Exercise 1.12.

(N1) If $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, then $\|x\|_2 = \sqrt{x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2} \geq 0$.

If $\|x\|_2 = 0$, then $x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2 = 0$ and so $x_1 = \cdots = x_n = 0$, that is $x = 0$.

(N2) For $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, then

$$\|\alpha \cdot x\|_2 = \sqrt{(\alpha x_1)^2 + \cdots + (\alpha x_n)^2} = \sqrt{\alpha^2(x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2)} = |\alpha| \sqrt{x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2} = |\alpha| \|x\|_2.$$

(N3) For $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we have, using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, that

$$\begin{aligned}\|x + y\|_2^2 &= (x_1 + y_1)^2 + \cdots + (x_n + y_n)^2 \\ &= x_1^2 + \cdots + x_n^2 + 2(x_1y_1 + \cdots + x_ny_n) + y_1^2 + \cdots + y_n^2 \\ &\leq \|x\|_2^2 + 2\|x\|_2\|y\|_2 + \|y\|_2^2 = (\|x\|_2 + \|y\|_2)^2.\end{aligned}$$

As $\|x + y\|_2 \geq 0$ and $\|x\|_2 + \|y\|_2 \geq 0$, we obtain by taking square roots that $\|x + y\|_2 \leq \|x\|_2 + \|y\|_2$.

Solution to Exercise 1.13.

(D1) As $d(x, y) \geq 0$ for all $x, y \in X$, also $d_1(x, y) = d(x, y)/(1 + d(x, y)) \geq 0$. If $x \in X$, then $d(x, x) = 0$, and hence $d_1(x, x) = 0/(1 + 0) = 0$ as well. If $x, y \in X$ and $d_1(x, y) = 0$, then $d(x, y)/(1 + d(x, y)) = 0$, and so $d(x, y) = 0$, which gives $x = y$.

(D2) If $x, y \in X$, then $d(x, y) = d(y, x)$ and so

$$d_1(x, y) = \frac{d(x, y)}{1 + d(x, y)} = \frac{d(y, x)}{1 + d(y, x)} = d_1(y, x).$$

(D3) Let $x, y, z \in X$. Set $a = d(x, z)$, $b = d(x, y)$, $c = d(y, z)$. We know that $a \leq b + c$. We want to show that

$$\frac{a}{1 + a} \leq \frac{b}{1 + b} + \frac{c}{1 + c}.$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{a}{1 + a} &= \frac{1 + a - 1}{1 + a} = 1 - \frac{1}{1 + a} \\ &\leq 1 - \frac{1}{1 + (b + c)} \quad (\text{using } a \leq b + c) \\ &= \frac{b + c}{1 + b + c} = \frac{b}{1 + b + c} + \frac{c}{1 + b + c} \\ &\leq \frac{b}{1 + b} + \frac{c}{1 + c} \quad (\text{as } b, c \geq 0).\end{aligned}$$

Solution to Exercise 1.14.

(N1) Clearly $\|M\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n} |m_{ij}| \geq 0$ for all $M = [m_{ij}] \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$.

If $\|M\|_\infty = 0$, then $|m_{ij}| = 0$ for all $1 \leq i \leq m$, $1 \leq j \leq n$, that is, $M = [m_{ij}] = 0$, the zero matrix.

(N2) For $[m_{ij}] \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$\|\alpha \cdot M\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n} |\alpha m_{ij}| = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n} |\alpha| |m_{ij}| = |\alpha| \max_{1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n} |m_{ij}| = |\alpha| \|M\|_\infty.$$

(N3) For matrices $P = [p_{ij}]$, $Q = [q_{ij}]$ in $\mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$, we have

$$|p_{ij} + q_{ij}| \leq |p_{ij}| + |q_{ij}| \leq \|P\|_\infty + \|Q\|_\infty.$$

As this holds for each i, j , we obtain $\|P + Q\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m, 1 \leq j \leq n} |p_{ij} + q_{ij}| \leq \|P\|_\infty + \|Q\|_\infty$.

Solution to Exercise 1.15. (1)

(N1) For every $f \in C[a, b]$, clearly $|f(x)| \geq 0$ for all x in $[a, b]$, and so $\|f\|_\infty = \max_{x \in [a, b]} |f(x)| \geq 0$.

If $\|f\|_\infty = 0$, then for all $x \in [a, b]$, $|f(x)| = 0$, and so $f(x) = 0$, that is $f = 0$, the zero function.

(N2) For $f \in C[a, b]$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$\|\alpha \cdot f\|_\infty = \max_{x \in [a, b]} |(\alpha \cdot f)(x)| = \max_{x \in [a, b]} |\alpha| |f(x)| = |\alpha| \max_{x \in [a, b]} |f(x)| = |\alpha| \|f\|_\infty.$$

(N3) For $f, g \in C[a, b]$ and $x \in [a, b]$, we have

$$|(f + g)(x)| = |f(x) + g(x)| \leq |f(x)| + |g(x)| \leq \|f\|_\infty + \|g\|_\infty.$$

As the choice of $x \in [a, b]$ was arbitrary, $\|f + g\|_\infty = \max_{x \in [a, b]} |(f + g)(x)| \leq \|f\|_\infty + \|g\|_\infty$.

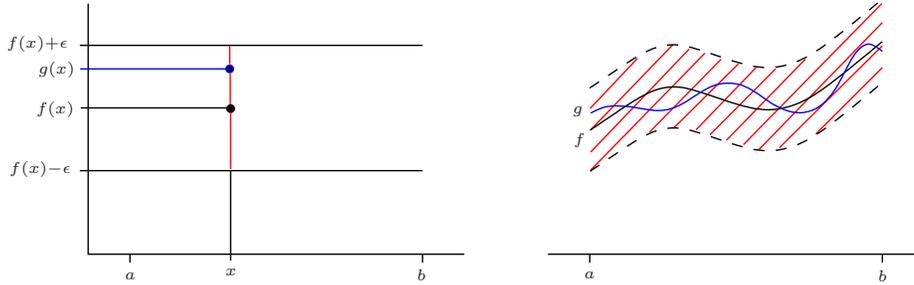
(2) If $\|f - g\|_\infty < \epsilon$, then $\max_{x \in [a, b]} |f(x) - g(x)| < \epsilon$. In particular, for all $x \in [a, b]$, $|f(x) - g(x)| < \epsilon$, that is, $f(x) - \epsilon < g(x) < f(x) + \epsilon$.

Conversely, if for each $x \in [a, b]$, $f(x) - \epsilon < g(x) < f(x) + \epsilon$, then $|f(x) - g(x)| < \epsilon$. Hence $\|f - g\|_\infty = \max_{x \in [a, b]} |f(x) - g(x)| < \epsilon$.

Thus there holds

$$\|f - g\|_\infty < \epsilon \iff \forall x \in [a, b], f(x) - \epsilon < g(x) < f(x) + \epsilon.$$

Pictorially, this means that the graph of g lies in a strip of width 2ϵ around the graph of f .



Solution to Exercise 1.16.

(N1) For every $f \in C[a, b]$, clearly $|f(x)| \geq 0$ for all x in $[a, b]$, and so $\|f\|_1 = \int_a^b |f(x)| dx \geq 0$.

Let $f \in C[a, b]$ satisfy $\|f\|_1 = 0$. Then $\int_a^b |f(x)| dx = 0$. Suppose that $f(c) > 0$ for some $c \in [a, b]$. Then, since f is continuous at c , for $\epsilon = f(c)/2$ there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x \in [a, b] \cap (c - \delta, c + \delta)$, we have $|f(x) - f(c)| < \epsilon = f(c)/2$. It follows that $f(x) > f(c)/2$ for all x in some subinterval $[\alpha, \beta]$ of $[a, b]$, where $\alpha < \beta$. Then

$$\int_a^b |f(x)| dx \geq \int_\alpha^\beta |f(x)| dx \geq \int_\alpha^\beta \frac{f(c)}{2} dx = \frac{1}{2} f(c) (\beta - \alpha) > 0,$$

a contradiction. A similar argument can be made when $f(c) < 0$.

It follows that $f(c) = 0$ for all $c \in [a, b]$, that is

$f = 0$, the zero function.

(N2) For $f \in C[a, b]$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$\|\alpha \cdot f\|_1 = \int_a^b |(\alpha \cdot f)(x)| dx = \int_a^b |\alpha| |f(x)| dx = |\alpha| \int_a^b |f(x)| dx = |\alpha| \|f\|_1.$$

(N3) For $f, g \in C[a, b]$ and $x \in [a, b]$, we have $|(f + g)(x)| = |f(x) + g(x)| \leq |f(x)| + |g(x)|$.

$$\text{So } \|f + g\|_1 = \int_a^b |(f + g)(x)| dx \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| + |g(x)| dx = \|f\|_1 + \|g\|_1.$$

Solution to Exercise 1.17.

(D1) If $y_1, y_2 \in Y$, then $d|_{Y \times Y}(y_1, y_2) = d(y_1, y_2) \geq 0$.

If $y \in Y$, then $d|_{Y \times Y}(y, y) = d(y, y) = 0$.

If $y_1, y_2 \in Y$ and $d|_{Y \times Y}(y_1, y_2) = 0$, then $d(y_1, y_2) = 0$, and so $y_1 = y_2$.

(D2) If $y_1, y_2 \in Y$, then $d|_{Y \times Y}(y_1, y_2) = d(y_1, y_2) = d(y_2, y_1) = d|_{Y \times Y}(y_2, y_1)$.

(D3) If $y_1, y_2, y_3 \in Y$, then $d|_{Y \times Y}(y_1, y_3) = d(y_1, y_3) \leq d(y_1, y_2) + d(y_2, y_3) = d|_{Y \times Y}(y_1, y_2) + d|_{Y \times Y}(y_2, y_3)$.

Solution to Exercise 1.18. (1) If $x = 0$, then $|x + y|_p = |y|_p = \max\{0, |y|_p\} = \max\{|x|_p, |y|_p\}$. So if either x or y is zero, then the result holds. Suppose now that $x \neq 0$ and $y \neq 0$, and let k_x, k_y be the largest powers of p that divide x, y , respectively. Then $x = p^{k_x} q_x$ and $y = p^{k_y} q_y$ for some integers q_x, q_y which aren't divisible by p . Without loss of generality, we may assume that $k_x \geq k_y$. (Otherwise we just interchange x and y .) Then $x + y = p^{k_x} q_x + p^{k_y} q_y = p^{k_y} (p^{k_x - k_y} q_x + q_y)$. From this it follows that the largest power of p dividing $x + y$ is at least k_y and so

$$|x + y|_p \leq \frac{1}{p^{k_y}} = \max\left\{\frac{1}{p^{k_x}}, \frac{1}{p^{k_y}}\right\} = \max\{|x|_p, |y|_p\}.$$

(2) We will check that (D1), (D2), (D3) hold.

(D1) If $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$, then clearly $d_p(x, y)$ is either $1/p^k$ for some k or 0, and hence it is surely nonnegative. If $x \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $d_p(x, x) = |x - x|_p = |0|_p = 0$. If $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $d_p(x, y) = 0$, then $|x - y|_p = 0$, and so $x = y$.

(D2) For a nonzero $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, clearly the largest power of p that divides n coincides with the one dividing $-n$. Hence for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, $|n|_p = |-n|_p$. If $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $d_p(x, y) = |x - y|_p = |y - x|_p = d_p(y, x)$.

(D3) If $x, y, z \in \mathbb{Z}$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_p(x, z) &= |x - z|_p = |(x - y) + (y - z)|_p \leq \max\{|x - y|_p, |y - z|_p\} \\ &\leq |x - y|_p + |y - z|_p = d_p(x, y) + d_p(y, z). \end{aligned}$$

Solution to Exercise 1.19. We know that the set $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{N}}$ of all real sequences is a vector space with termwise addition and scalar multiplication. We will prove that ℓ^2 is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{N}}$. If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}, (b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ belong to ℓ^2 , then we have that the sequence of partial sums $A_n := a_1^2 + \cdots + a_n^2$ and $B_n := b_1^2 + \cdots + b_n^2$ are bounded. For real numbers x, y , we have $(x - y)^2 \geq 0$, and so $(x + y)^2 \leq 2(x^2 + y^2)$. This yields that

$$(a_1 + b_1)^2 + \cdots + (a_n + b_n)^2 \leq 2(A_n + B_n),$$

showing that the monotone sequence $((a_1 + b_1)^2 + \cdots + (a_n + b_n)^2)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded, and hence convergent. Consequently $(a_n + b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ belongs to ℓ^2 , and so the subset ℓ^2 is closed under vector addition.

If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ belongs to ℓ^2 and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, then

$$(\alpha a_1)^2 + \cdots + (\alpha a_n)^2 = \alpha^2(a_1^2 + \cdots + a_n^2),$$

and so $\alpha \cdot (a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (\alpha a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ also belongs to ℓ^2 . Consequently the subset ℓ^2 is closed under scalar multiplication.

Finally the zero sequence $(0)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is obviously an element of ℓ^2 . Thus ℓ^2 is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^{\mathbb{N}}$, and hence it is a vector space with termwise addition and scalar multiplication.

(N1) If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ belongs to ℓ^2 , then clearly $\|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|^2} \geq 0$.

If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \in \ell^2$ and $\|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 = 0$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|^2 = 0$, and so $|a_n|^2 = 0$ for each n . Thus

$$(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (0)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}.$$

(N2) If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ belongs to ℓ^2 and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, then

$$\|\alpha \cdot (a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 = \|(\alpha a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |\alpha a_n|^2} = |\alpha| \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|^2} = |\alpha| \|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2.$$

(N3) If $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}, (b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ belong to ℓ^2 , then we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^n (a_k + b_k)^2 &= \sum_{k=1}^n a_k^2 + 2 \sum_{k=1}^n a_k b_k + \sum_{k=1}^n b_k^2 \\ &\leq \|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2^2 + 2 \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^n a_k^2} \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^n b_k^2} + \|(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2^2 \\ &\leq \|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2^2 + 2 \|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 \|(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 + \|(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2^2 \\ &\leq \left(\|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 + \|(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 \right)^2, \end{aligned}$$

and so it follows that $\|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} + (b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2^2 \leq \left(\|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 + \|(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 \right)^2$.

Since $\|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} + (b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 \geq 0$ and $\|(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 + \|(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\|_2 \geq 0$, by taking square roots, we obtain the triangle inequality.

Solution to Exercise 1.20.

- (D1) If $x, y \in \mathbb{F}_2^n$, then clearly $d(x, y) \geq 0$, since it is the number of entries where x and y differ. If $x \in \mathbb{F}_2^n$, then since x is identical to itself, $d(x, x) = 0$. If $x, y \in \mathbb{F}_2^n$ and $d(x, y) = 0$, then x and y differ in no place, and so $x = y$.
- (D2) If $x, y \in \mathbb{F}_2^n$, then the number of places where x differs from y is the same as the number of places y differs from x . Hence $d(x, y) = d(y, x)$.
- (D3) Define for $k = 1, \dots, n$, the function $\delta_k : \mathbb{F}_2^n \times \mathbb{F}_2^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$\delta_k(x, y) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if the } k\text{th digit of } x \text{ and } y \text{ differ} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Clearly $d(x, y) = \sum_{k=1}^n \delta_k(x, y)$.

We establish the triangle inequality simply by proving it for each δ_k . Let $x, y, z \in \mathbb{F}_2^n$, and $k \in \{1, \dots, n\}$. If the k th digit of x and z coincide, then $\delta_k(x, z) = 0$ and as $\delta_k(x, y), \delta_k(y, z) \geq 0$, $\delta_k(x, z) \leq \delta_k(x, y) + \delta_k(y, z)$ holds trivially. If on the other hand, the k th digits of x and z differ, then $\delta_k(x, z) = 1$. But then it cannot be the case that both $\delta_k(x, y) = 0$ and $\delta_k(y, z) = 0$. For if this were the case, k th digits of x, y, z would be the same, a contradiction to $\delta_k(x, z) = 1$. Hence $\delta_k(x, y) = 1$ or $\delta_k(y, z) = 1$, and then we have $\delta_k(x, y) + \delta_k(y, z) \geq 1 (= \delta_k(x, z))$. This completes the proof.

¹this is the standard mathematical “inclusive or”, meaning that either just one case holds or *both* can hold too

Solution to Exercise 1.25. Consider the open ball $B(x, r) = \{y \in X : d(x, y) < r\}$ in X . If $y \in B(x, r)$, then $d(x, y) < r$. Define $r' = r - d(x, y) > 0$. We claim that $B(y, r') \subseteq B(x, r)$. Let $z \in B(y, r')$. Then $d(z, y) < r' = r - d(x, y)$ and so $d(x, z) \leq d(x, y) + d(y, z) < r$. Hence $z \in B(x, r)$. Figure 5 illustrates this.

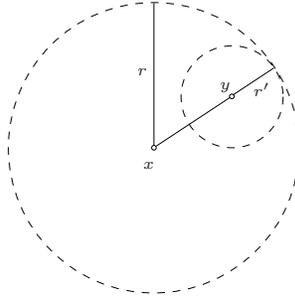


Figure 5. The open ball is open.

Solution to Exercise 1.32. Let F_i ($i \in I$) be a family of closed sets. Then $X \setminus F_i$ ($i \in I$) forms a family of open sets. Hence

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} X \setminus F_i = X \setminus \bigcap_{i \in I} F_i$$

is open. Consequently, $\bigcap_{i \in I} F_i = X \setminus \left(X \setminus \bigcap_{i \in I} F_i \right)$ is closed.

If F_1, \dots, F_n are closed, then $X \setminus F_1, \dots, X \setminus F_n$ are open and so the intersection

$$\bigcap_{i=1}^n (X \setminus F_i) = X \setminus \bigcup_{i=1}^n F_i$$

of these finitely many open sets is open as well. Thus $\bigcup_{i=1}^n F_i = X \setminus \left(X \setminus \bigcup_{i=1}^n F_i \right)$ is closed.

For showing that the finiteness condition cannot be dropped, we simply rework Example 1.27 by taking complements. We know that $F_n := \mathbb{R} \setminus \left(-\frac{1}{n}, \frac{1}{n}\right)$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) is closed and the union of these,

$$\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} F_n = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathbb{R} \setminus \left(-\frac{1}{n}, \frac{1}{n}\right) = \mathbb{R} \setminus \bigcap_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(-\frac{1}{n}, \frac{1}{n}\right) = \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$$

which is not closed, since if it were, its complement $\mathbb{R} \setminus (\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}) = \{0\}$ would be open, which is not the case.

Solution to Exercise 1.33. The point $c := \left(\frac{1}{2}, 0\right) \in I$, but for each $r > 0$, the point $y = \left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{r}{2}\right)$ belongs to the ball $B(c, r)$, but not to I , since $\|y - c\|_2 = \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{r}{2} - 0\right)^2} = \frac{r}{2} < r$, but $\frac{r}{2} \neq 0$. See Figure 6.

Solution to Exercise 1.34.

(1) Define $\|\cdot\|_1 : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $\|x\|_1 = |x_1| + |x_2|$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}^2$). We will show that $\|\cdot\|_1$ is a norm on \mathbb{R}^2 and hence $d_1(x, y) := \|x - y\|_1$ defines a metric on \mathbb{R}^2 .

(N1) For $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$, clearly $\|x\|_1 = |x_1| + |x_2| \geq 0$.

If $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $\|x\|_1 = 0$, then $|x_1| + |x_2| = 0$ and so $x_1 = x_2 = 0$ and so $x = 0$.

(N2) If $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, then $\|\alpha \cdot x\|_1 = |\alpha x_1| + |\alpha x_2| = |\alpha||x_1| + |\alpha||x_2| = |\alpha|\|x\|_1$.

(N3) If $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$, then $\|x + y\|_1 = |x_1 + y_1| + |x_2 + y_2| \leq |x_1| + |y_1| + |x_2| + |y_2| = \|x\|_1 + \|y\|_1$.

Define $\|\cdot\|_{\infty} : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $\|x\|_{\infty} = \max\{|x_1|, |x_2|\}$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}^2$). We will show that $\|\cdot\|_{\infty}$ is a norm on \mathbb{R}^2 and hence $d_{\infty}(x, y) := \|x - y\|_{\infty}$ defines a metric on \mathbb{R}^2 .

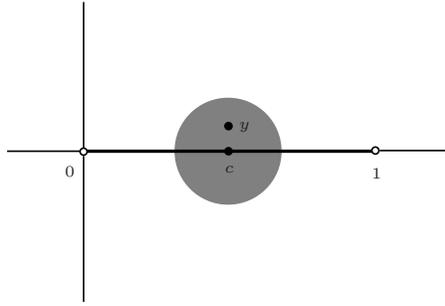


Figure 6. The segment $(0, 1) \times \{0\}$ is not open in \mathbb{R}^2 .

(N1) For $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$, clearly $\|x\|_\infty = \max\{|x_1|, |x_2|\} \geq 0$.

If $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $\|x\|_\infty = 0$, then $\max\{|x_1|, |x_2|\} = 0$ and so $x_1 = x_2 = 0$ and so $x = 0$.

(N2) If $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, then

$$\|\alpha \cdot x\|_\infty = \max\{|\alpha x_1|, |\alpha x_2|\} = \max\{|\alpha| |x_1|, |\alpha| |x_2|\} = |\alpha| \max\{|x_1|, |x_2|\} = |\alpha| \|x\|_\infty.$$

(N3) If $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$, then

$$\begin{aligned} |x_1 + y_1| &\leq |x_1| + |y_1| \leq \|x\|_\infty + \|y\|_\infty \text{ and} \\ |x_2 + y_2| &\leq |x_2| + |y_2| \leq \|x\|_\infty + \|y\|_\infty, \end{aligned}$$

and so $\|x + y\|_\infty = \max\{|x_1 + y_1|, |x_2 + y_2|\} \leq \|x\|_\infty + \|y\|_\infty$.

(2) $B(0, 1)$ in the metric space (\mathbb{R}^2, d_1) is the set $\{(x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |x_1| + |x_2| < 1\}$, namely the interior of the rhombus with vertices $(1, 0)$, $(0, 1)$, $(-1, 0)$, $(0, -1)$, as shown in Figure 7.

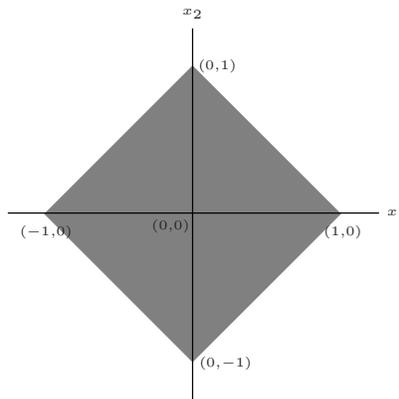


Figure 7. The ball in \mathbb{R}^2 with center 0 and radius 1 in $(\mathbb{R}^2, \|\cdot\|_1)$.

$B(0, 1)$ in the metric space (\mathbb{R}^2, d_2) is the set $\{(x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x_1^2 + x_2^2 < 1\}$, namely the interior of the circle with center $(0, 0)$ and unit radius, as shown in Figure 8.

In (\mathbb{R}^2, d_∞) , $B(0, 1) = \{(x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : \max\{|x_1|, |x_2|\} < 1\} = \{(x_1, x_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |x_1| < 1 \text{ and } |x_2| < 1\}$, namely the interior of the square with vertices $(1, 1)$, $(-1, 1)$, $(-1, -1)$, $(1, -1)$, as shown in Figure 9.

Figure 10 summarizes the above findings.

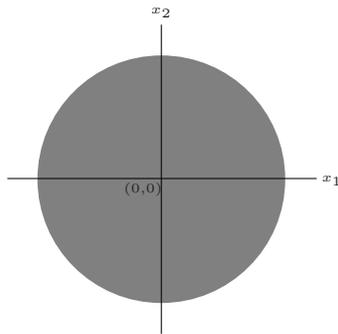


Figure 8. The ball in \mathbb{R}^2 with center 0 and radius 1 in $(\mathbb{R}^2, \|\cdot\|_2)$.

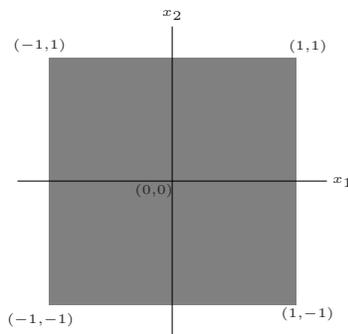


Figure 9. The ball in \mathbb{R}^2 with center 0 and radius 1 in $(\mathbb{R}^2, \|\cdot\|_\infty)$.

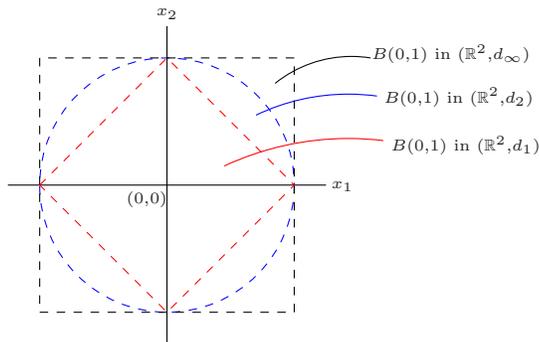


Figure 10. Open unit balls with center $(0,0)$ in \mathbb{R}^2 with the three different metrics d_1, d_2, d_∞ . The balls are the respective interiors of the dotted curves.

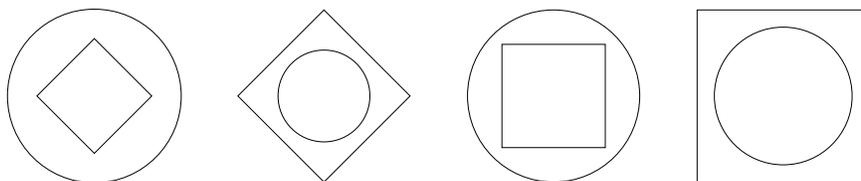


Figure 11. The set of open sets in $(\mathbb{R}^2, d_1), (\mathbb{R}^2, d_2), (\mathbb{R}^2, d_\infty)$ coincide.

(3) See the last figure above.

Solution to Exercise 1.35.

- (1) False.
For example in the metric space \mathbb{R} , consider the set $[0, 1)$. This set $[0, 1)$ is not open, since every open ball with center 0 has at least one negative real number, and so has points not belonging to $[0, 1)$. On the other hand, this set $[0, 1)$ is not closed either, because its complement is $U := (-\infty, 0) \cup [1, \infty)$, which is not open since every open ball with center 1 has at least one positive real number strictly less than one, and so has points that do not belong to U .
- (2) False.
 \mathbb{R} is open in \mathbb{R} , and it is also closed.
- (3) True.
 \emptyset and X are both open and closed in any metric space X .
- (4) True.
 $[0, 1)$ is neither open nor closed in \mathbb{R} .
- (5) False.
 $0 \in \mathbb{Q}$, but every open ball centered at 0 contains irrational numbers; just consider $\sqrt{2}/n$, with a sufficiently large n .
- (6) False.
Consider the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ given by $a_1 = 3/2$, and for $n > 1$,

$$a_{n+1} = \frac{4 + 3a_n}{3 + 2a_n}.$$

Then it can be shown by induction that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is monotone decreasing and bounded below by $\sqrt{2}$. So this sequence is convergent with a limit L satisfying

$$L = \frac{4 + 3L}{3 + 2L},$$

and so $L^2 = 2$. As L must be positive (the sequence is bounded below by $\sqrt{2}$), it follows that $L = \sqrt{2}$. So every ball with center $\sqrt{2}$ and a positive radius contains elements from \mathbb{Q} , showing that $\mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q}$ is not open, and hence \mathbb{Q} is not closed.

(Alternately, consider the real number c with the decimal expansion

$$c = 0.101001000100001 \dots$$

This number c is irrational because it has a nonterminating and nonrepeating decimal expansion. If we consider the sequence of rational numbers obtained by truncation, namely

$$\begin{aligned} &0.1 \\ &0.101 \\ &0.101001 \\ &0.1010010001 \\ &0.101001000100001 \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

then this sequence converges with limit c , and so every ball with center c and a positive radius contains elements from \mathbb{Q} , showing again that $\mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q}$ is not open, and hence \mathbb{Q} is not closed.)

- (7) True
We have

$$\mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Z} = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} (n, n + 1).$$

As each interval $(n, n + 1)$ is open, their union is open as well, and so $\mathbb{Z} = \mathbb{R} \setminus (\mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Z})$ is closed.

Solution to Exercise 1.36. We have already seen in Exercise 1.25 that the interior of \mathbb{S}^2 , namely the open ball $B(0, 1) = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 : \|x\|_2 < 1\}$ is open. We now show that the exterior of \mathbb{S}^2 , namely the set $U = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 : \|x\|_2 > 1\}$ is open as well. Let $y \in U$. Then $\|y\|_2 > 1$. Thus $r := \|y\|_2 - 1 > 0$. Consider the open ball $B(y, r) = \{z \in \mathbb{R}^3 : \|z - y\|_2 < r\}$. We claim that $B(y, r)$ is contained in U . Let $z \in B(y, r)$. Then $\|z - y\|_2 < r$. By the triangle inequality, $\|y\|_2 = \|z - y + z\|_2 \leq \|z - y\|_2 + \|z\|_2 < r + \|z\|_2$ and so $\|z\|_2 > \|y\|_2 - r = \|y\|_2 - (\|y\|_2 - 1) = 1$.

Thus the complement of \mathbb{S}^2 , being the union of the two open sets $B(0, 1)$ and U , is open. Consequently \mathbb{S}^2 is closed.

Solution to Exercise 1.37. Let (X, d) be the metric space and let $x \in X$. If $U := X \setminus \{x\} = \emptyset$, then since \emptyset is open, it follows that $\{x\}$ is closed.

Let $y \in U := X \setminus \{x\}$. Then $r := d(x, y) > 0$. We claim that the open ball $B(y, r)$ is contained in U . If $z \in B(y, r)$, then $d(y, z) < r$. Thus $d(z, x) \geq d(x, y) - d(y, z) \geq d(x, y) - r > 0$. Hence $z \neq x$, and so $z \in X \setminus \{x\} = U$. Consequently U is open, and so $\{x\} = X \setminus U = X \setminus (X \setminus \{x\})$ is closed.

If F is empty, then it is closed. Otherwise,

$$F = \{x_1, \dots, x_n\} = \bigcup_{i=1}^n \{x_i\},$$

being the finite union of the closed sets $\{x_1\}, \dots, \{x_n\}$ is closed too.

Solution to Exercise 1.38. We simply prove that every subset Y of X is open. It then follows, by taking complements of these, that every subset is closed.

If Y is empty, then it is open. Otherwise we have

$$Y = \bigcup_{y \in Y} \{y\}.$$

We will show that every singleton set $\{y\}$ is open from which it follows that the union above is open. To show that $\{y\}$ is open, we note that the open ball $B(y, \frac{1}{2}) = \{z \in X : d(z, y) < \frac{1}{2}\} = \{y\}$.

Solution to Exercise 1.39. Let $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ and $x < y$. By the Archimedean property of \mathbb{R} , there is a positive integer n such that $n > \frac{1}{y-x}$, that is $n(y-x) > 1$. Also, there are positive integers m_1, m_2 such that $m_1 > nx$ and $m_2 > -nx$, so that $-m_2 < nx < m_1$. Thus

$$nx \in [-m_2, -m_2 + 1) \cup [-m_2 + 1, -m_2 + 2) \cup \dots \cup [m_1 - 1, m_1).$$

Hence there is an integer m such that $m - 1 \leq nx < m$. We have $nx < m \leq 1 + nx < ny$, and so dividing by n , we have

$$x < \frac{m}{n} < y.$$

Consequently, between any two real numbers, there is a rational number.

Let $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there is a rational number y such that $x - \epsilon < y < x + \epsilon$, that is, $|x - y| < \epsilon$. Hence \mathbb{Q} is dense in \mathbb{R} .

Solution to Exercise 1.40. Let $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and let $\epsilon > 0$. If $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q}$, then taking $y = x$, we have $|x - y| = 0 < \epsilon$. If on the other hand, $x \in \mathbb{Q}$, then let $n \in \mathbb{N}$ be such that $n > \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\epsilon}$ so that with $y := x + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{n}$, we have that $y \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q}$ and $|x - y| = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{n} < \epsilon$. Thus $\mathbb{R} \setminus \mathbb{Q}$ is dense in \mathbb{R} .

Solution to Exercise 1.41.

- (1) Let $x, y \in B(0, r)$ and $t \in (0, 1)$. Then $\|x\| < r$ and $\|y\| < r$. Thus

$$\|(1-t)x + ty\| \leq \|(1-t)x\| + \|ty\| = (1-t)\|x\| + t\|y\| < (1-t)r + tr = r,$$

and so $(1-t)x + ty \in B(0, r)$. Hence $B(0, r)$ is a convex set.

- (2) The unit circle is not convex, since $x := (1, 0) \in \mathbb{S}^1$, $y := (-1, 0) \in \mathbb{S}^1$ and $t = \frac{1}{2} \in (0, 1)$, but $(1-t)x + ty = \frac{x+y}{2} = (0, 0) \notin \mathbb{S}^1$ since $\|(0, 0)\|_2 = 0 \neq 1$. So \mathbb{S}^1 is not convex.
- (3) Let $x, y \in \Sigma$ and $t \in (0, 1)$. Then $Ax = Ay = b$ and all the components of x and of y are nonnegative. Hence $A((1-t)x + ty) = (1-t)Ax + tAy = (1-t)b + tb = b$. Also if $k \in \{1, \dots, n\}$, then the k th component of $(1-t)x + ty$ is $(1-t)x_k + ty_k$, which is nonnegative. Thus $(1-t)x + ty \in \Sigma$. Hence Σ is convex.

Solution to Exercise 1.42. For both metrics we have to verify that (D1), (D2) and (D3) are satisfied. Since both metrics are defined by cases, we have to carefully consider all possible cases, especially when verifying (D3).

We first consider the “express railway metric” d_e .

(D1) Given $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$, we have to show that $d_e(x, y) \geq 0$. However, this is true for both cases in the definition of d_e (the first case because $\|\cdot\|_2$ satisfies (N1)).

Given $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$, we also have to show that $d_e(x, x) = 0$. This is true by definition of d_e .

Finally, given $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$ such that $d_e(x, y) = 0$, we have to show that $x = y$. Suppose on the contrary that $x \neq y$. Then by definition, $d_e(x, y) = \|x\|_2 + \|y\|_2$. Therefore, $\|x\|_2 + \|y\|_2 = 0$. Since $\|x\|_2 \geq 0$ and $\|y\|_2 \geq 0$ ((N1) holds for $\|\cdot\|_2$), it follows that $\|x\|_2 = 0$ and $\|y\|_2 = 0$. By (N1) it follows that $x = \mathbf{0}$ and $y = \mathbf{0}$. This contradicts the assumption that $x \neq y$.

Therefore, $x = y$.

(D2)

$$\begin{aligned} d_e(u, v) &= \|u\|_2 + \|v\|_2 \\ &= \|v\|_2 + \|u\|_2 = d_e(v, u). \end{aligned}$$

(D3) Given $x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}^2$ we have to show that $d_e(x, z) \leq d_e(x, y) + d_e(y, z)$.

If $x = z$ then $d_e(x, z) = 0 \leq d_e(x, y) + d_e(y, z)$ by definition of $d_e(x, x)$ and by (D1) (already proved).

If $x = y$ then $d_e(x, y) + d_e(y, z) = d_e(x, x) + d_e(x, z) = d_e(x, z)$, also by (D1), so the triangle inequality holds.

If $y = z$ then the triangle inequality holds similarly.

So we may assume without loss of generality that the above three cases do not occur: $x \neq z$, $x \neq y$, $y \neq z$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d_e(x, z) &= \|x\|_2 + \|z\|_2 \text{ (by definition of } d_e) \\ &\leq \|x\|_2 + \|y\|_2 + \|y\|_2 + \|z\|_2 \text{ (by (N1) } \|y\|_2 \geq 0) \\ &= d_e(x, y) + d_e(y, z) \text{ (again by definition of } d_e). \end{aligned}$$

We have shown that d_e is a metric on \mathbb{R}^2 .

Next we consider the “stopping railway metric” d_s .

(D1) Given $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$, $d_s(x, y) \geq 0$, because in both cases $d_s(x, y)$ is defined by a 2-norm or a sum of 2-norms, and we know that $\|x\|_2 \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$.

Given $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$,

$$\begin{aligned} d_s(x, x) &= \|x - x\|_2 \text{ (since } x \text{ and } x \text{ are linearly dependent)} \\ &= \|\mathbf{0}\|_2 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Given $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$ such that $d_s(x, y) = 0$, we have to show that $x = y$. Suppose that x and y are linearly independent. Then $\|x\|_2 + \|y\|_2 = 0$. As before, this implies that $\|x\|_2 = \|y\|_2 = 0$ and $x = \mathbf{0} = y$, which contradicts linear independence.

Therefore, x and y are linearly dependent. Then $d_s(x, y) = \|x - y\|_2 = 0$. It follows from (N1) that $x - y = \mathbf{0}$ and therefore, $x = y$.

(D2) Let $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^2$ be given.

If x and y are linearly independent, then $d_s(x, y) = \|x\|_2 + \|y\|_2 = \|y\|_2 + \|x\|_2 = d_s(y, x)$, the last equality because y and x are linearly independent.

If x and y are linearly dependent, then $d_s(x, y) = \|x - y\|_2 = \|(-1)(y - x)\|_2 = |-1|\|y - x\| = d_s(y, x)$, the last equality because y and x are linearly dependent.

(D3) Let $x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}^2$ be given. We have to show that $d_s(x, z) \leq d_s(x, y) + d_s(y, z)$. For each of $\{x, z\}$, $\{x, y\}$, $\{y, z\}$, the set is either linearly independent or linearly dependent. Thus there are $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$ cases to consider:

$\{x, z\}$	$\{x, y\}$	$\{y, z\}$	Inequality to prove
LI	LI	LI	$\ x\ _2 + \ z\ _2 \leq (\ x\ _2 + \ y\ _2) + (\ y\ _2 + \ z\ _2)$ This is true because $\ y\ _2 \geq 0$.
LI	LI	LD	$\ x\ _2 + \ z\ _2 \leq (\ x\ _2 + \ y\ _2) + \ y - z\ _2$ This follows from $\ z\ _2 = \ y - y + z\ _2 \leq \ y\ _2 + \ -y + z\ _2$ (N3) $\qquad\qquad\qquad = \ y\ _2 + \ y - z\ _2$ (N2).
LI	LD	LI	$\ x\ _2 + \ z\ _2 \leq \ x - y\ _2 + (\ y\ _2 + \ z\ _2)$ Similar to the previous case.
LI	LD	LD	$\ x\ _2 + \ z\ _2 \leq \ x - y\ _2 + \ y - z\ _2$ This case can only occur if $y = \mathbf{0}$, since y has to be a multiple of x and a multiple of z , but x and z are linearly independent. So the inequality follows from $\ x\ _2 + \ z\ _2 = \ x - \mathbf{0}\ _2 + \ \mathbf{0} - z\ _2$.
LD	LI	LI	$\ x - z\ _2 \leq (\ x\ _2 + \ y\ _2) + (\ y\ _2 + \ z\ _2)$. This follows from $\ x - z\ _2 \leq \ x\ _2 + \ -z\ _2$ (N3) $\qquad\qquad\qquad = \ x\ _2 + \ z\ _2$ (N2) $\qquad\qquad\qquad \leq \ x\ _2 + 2\ y\ _2 + \ z\ _2$.
LD	LI	LD	$\ x - z\ _2 \leq (\ x\ _2 + \ y\ _2) + \ y - z\ _2$. This case can only occur if $z = \mathbf{0}$, since z has to be a multiple of the linearly independent x and y . So the inequality follows from $\ x - \mathbf{0}\ _2 \leq (\ x\ _2 + \ y\ _2) + \ y - \mathbf{0}\ _2$.
LD	LD	LI	$\ x - z\ _2 \leq \ x - y\ _2 + (\ y\ _2 + \ z\ _2)$. Similar to the previous case.
LD	LD	LD	$\ x - z\ _2 \leq \ x - y\ _2 + \ y - z\ _2$. Follows from $\ x - z\ _2 = \ x - y + y - z\ _2 \leq \ x - y\ _2 + \ y - z\ _2$ by N3.

Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 2

Solution to Exercise 2.5. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Since $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence, there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n, m > N$, $|a_n - a_m| < \epsilon$. In particular for $n > N$, we have $m := n + 1 > N$ and so $|a_n - a_{n+1}| < \epsilon$, that is, $|(a_{n+1} - a_n) - 0| < \epsilon$. So $(a_{n+1} - a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit 0.

Solution to Exercise 2.9.

(1) True.

Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be convergent with limit L , and let $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a subsequence. If $\epsilon > 0$, then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$, $|a_n - L| < \epsilon$. Choose $K \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $k > K$, $n_k > N$. Then for all $k > K$, $n_k > N$ and so $|a_{n_k} - L| < \epsilon$. Thus $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit L .

(2) False.

The sequence $((-1)^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is divergent, but it has as a subsequence $((-1)^{2n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (1)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, which is convergent with limit 1.

(3) True.

Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be bounded, and let $M > 0$ be a number such that for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $|a_n| \leq M$. If $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a subsequence, then also $|a_{n_k}| \leq M$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, and so it is bounded as well.

(4) False.

The sequence $1, 0, 2, 0, 3, 0, \dots$ is unbounded, but has as a subsequence $0, 0, 0, \dots$, which is bounded.

(5) True.

Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be an increasing sequence. (The argument is similar for a decreasing sequence.) Suppose that $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a subsequence. For each $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $n_{k+1} > n_k$ and so we have that $a_{n_{k+1}} \geq a_{n_{k+1}-1} \geq a_{n_{k+1}-2} \geq \dots \geq a_{n_k}$. Thus $(a_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is increasing as well.

(6) False.

The sequence $1, 0, 2, 0, 3, 0, \dots$ is not monotone, but it has as a subsequence $1, 2, 3, \dots$, which is monotone.

(7) True.

The sequence itself is a subsequence of itself, and so it must be convergent too.

(8) False.

The sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = ((-1)^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is divergent, but we have that both $(a_{2n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (1)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(a_{2n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (-1)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are convergent (with limits 1 and -1 , respectively).

(9) True.

Let L be the common limit, and let $\epsilon > 0$. There exists an $N_1 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N_1$, $|a_{2n} - L| < \epsilon$. Also, there exists an $N_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N_2$, $|a_{2n+1} - L| < \epsilon$. Choose $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $N > \max\{2N_1, 2N_2 + 1\}$. Let $n > N$. If n is even, say $n = 2k$ for some $k \in \mathbb{N}$, then $2k > N \geq 2N_1$ gives $k > N_1$, and so $|a_{2k} - L| = |a_n - L| < \epsilon$. If, on the other hand, n is odd, say $n = 2k + 1$ for some $k \in \mathbb{N}$, then $2k + 1 = n > N \geq 2N_2 + 1$ gives $k > N_2$, and so $|a_{2k+1} - L| = |a_n - L| < \epsilon$. Hence for all $n > N$, $|a_n - L| < \epsilon$. Consequently, $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit L .

Solution to Exercise 2.10. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a bounded increasing sequence of real numbers. Let M be the minimum (or least element) of the set of upper bounds of $\{a_n : n \in \mathbb{N}\}$. The existence of M is guaranteed by the least upper bound property of the set of real numbers. We show that M is the limit of $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$. Taking $\epsilon > 0$, we must show that there exists a positive integer N such that $|a_n - M| < \epsilon$ for all $n > N$. Since $M - \epsilon < M$, $M - \epsilon$ is not an upper bound of $\{a_n : n \in \mathbb{N}\}$. Therefore there exists N with $M \geq a_N > M - \epsilon$. Since $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is increasing, $|a_n - M| < \epsilon$ for all $n \geq N$.

Solution to Exercise 2.11. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n &= 1 + n \cdot \frac{1}{n} + \frac{n(n-1)}{1 \cdot 2} \frac{1}{n^2} + \frac{n(n-1)(n-2)}{1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3} \frac{1}{n^3} + \cdots + \frac{n \cdots 2}{(n-1)!} \frac{1}{n^{n-1}} + \frac{1}{n^n} \\
 &= 1 + 1 + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \frac{1}{2} + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots \\
 &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{n-2}{n}\right) \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \\
 &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{n-1}{n}\right) \frac{1}{n!} \\
 &< 1 + 1 + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \frac{1}{2} + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n+1}\right) \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots \\
 &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n+1}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{n-2}{n+1}\right) \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \\
 &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n+1}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{n-1}{n+1}\right) \frac{1}{n!} \\
 &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n+1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n+1}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{n}{n+1}\right) \frac{1}{(n+1)!} \\
 &= \left(1 + \frac{1}{n+1}\right)^{n+1}.
 \end{aligned}$$

So the sequence is increasing. Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n &= 1 + 1 + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \frac{1}{2} + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots \\
 &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{n-2}{n}\right) \frac{1}{(n-1)!} \\
 &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{n}\right) \left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{n-1}{n}\right) \frac{1}{n!} \\
 &< 1 + 1 + 1 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + 1 \cdot \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots + 1 \cdot \frac{1}{n!} \\
 &< 1 + 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 2} + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} \\
 &= 1 + \frac{1 - \frac{1}{2^n}}{1 - \frac{1}{2}} < 1 + 2 = 3,
 \end{aligned}$$

and so the sequence is also bounded.

Solution to Exercise 2.12.

- (1) Divergent. $(\cos(\pi n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = ((-1)^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, which has the convergent subsequences $1, 1, 1, \dots$ and $-1, -1, -1, \dots$ with *different* limits $-1, 1$, respectively. But all subsequences of a convergent sequence must converge to the same limit (namely the limit of the original sequence). This means that $(\cos(\pi n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = ((-1)^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ can't be convergent.
- (2) Divergent. The sequence is not bounded, whereas we know that all convergent real sequences must be bounded.
- (3) Convergent with limit 0. Indeed, we have for all n that

$$-\frac{1}{n} \leq \frac{\sin n}{n} \leq \frac{1}{n},$$

and the claim follows by the Sandwich Theorem.

- (4) Divergent. The sequence is not bounded, since for any $M > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left|1 - \frac{3n^2}{n+1}\right| &= \left|1 - \frac{3(n^2-1)+3}{n+1}\right| = \left|1 - 3(n-1) - \frac{3}{n+1}\right| = \left|-3n+4 - \frac{3}{n+1}\right| \\
 &= 3n-4 + \frac{3}{n+1} > 3n-4 > M
 \end{aligned}$$

if we choose $n > (M+4)/3$. On the other hand, all convergent real sequences must be bounded.

(5) Convergent with limit 1. For $n \geq 2$, we have $n^{\frac{1}{n}} > 1^{\frac{1}{n}} = 1$. Set

$$b_n := n^{\frac{1}{n}} - 1 > 0 \text{ for } n > 2.$$

Then $n^{\frac{1}{n}} = 1 + b_n$, and so

$$n = (1 + b_n)^n = 1 + nb_n + \frac{n(n-1)}{2}b_n^2 + \cdots + nb_n^{n-1} + b_n^n > \frac{n(n-1)}{2}b_n^2.$$

Thus $\frac{2}{n-1} > b_n^2 > 0$ for $n > 2$, and so by the Sandwich Theorem, $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n^2 = 0$. Hence also

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = 0,$$

and so

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n^{\frac{1}{n}} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (1 + b_n) = 1 + 0 = 1.$$

An alternate proof can be given using the Arithmetic Mean-Geometric Mean Inequality, which says that for nonnegative real numbers a_1, \dots, a_n , there holds that

$$\text{their arithmetic mean} := \frac{a_1 + \cdots + a_n}{n} \geq \sqrt[n]{a_1 \cdots a_n} =: \text{their geometric mean}.$$

Applying this to the n numbers $\underbrace{1, \dots, 1}_{(n-2)\text{ times}}, \sqrt{n}, \sqrt{n}$ gives

$$\frac{(n-2) \cdot 1 + \sqrt{n} + \sqrt{n}}{n} \geq \sqrt[n]{\sqrt{n} \cdot \sqrt{n}} = n^{\frac{1}{n}},$$

and so,

$$1 - \frac{2}{n} + \frac{2}{\sqrt{n}} \geq n^{\frac{1}{n}} (\geq 1).$$

By the Sandwich Theorem, it follows that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n^{\frac{1}{n}} = 1$.

(6) Convergent with limit 1. We have

$$a_n := 0.\underbrace{9 \dots 9}_{n \text{ times}} = \frac{9}{10} + \frac{9}{100} + \frac{9}{1000} + \cdots + \frac{9}{10^n} = \frac{9}{10} \left(1 - \left(\frac{1}{10} \right)^n \right) \frac{1}{1 - \frac{1}{10}}.$$

Since $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{1}{10} \right)^{n+1} = 0$, it follows that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = \frac{9}{10} \frac{(1-0)}{1 - \frac{1}{10}} = 1$.

Solution to Exercise 2.15. (“If” part) Suppose that $(a_n^{(k)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit $L^{(k)}$, $k = 1, \dots, d$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. We have the existence of indices $N_1, \dots, N_d \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for $n > N_k$, $|a_n^{(k)} - L^{(k)}| < \epsilon/\sqrt{d}$, $k = 1, \dots, d$. So with $N := \max\{N_1, \dots, N_d\}$, for $n > N$ we have that $|a_n^{(k)} - L^{(k)}| < \epsilon/\sqrt{d}$, $k = 1, \dots, d$. Now define $L \in \mathbb{R}^d$, by setting its k th component to be $L^{(k)}$, $k = 1, \dots, d$. Then we have

$$\|a_n - L\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^d |a_n^{(k)} - L^{(k)}|^2} < \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^d (\epsilon/\sqrt{d})^2} = \epsilon.$$

Thus $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to L .

(“Only if” part) Suppose that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to L , and let the k th component of L be denoted by $L^{(k)}$, $k = 1, \dots, d$. If $\epsilon > 0$, then let $N \in \mathbb{N}$ be such that for all $n > N$, $\|a_n - L\|_2 < \epsilon$. But then we have for $n > N$ that

$$|a_n^{(k)} - L^{(k)}| \leq \sqrt{\sum_{\ell=1}^d |a_n^{(\ell)} - L^{(\ell)}|^2} = \|a_n - L\|_2 < \epsilon,$$

for each $k = 1, \dots, d$. This shows that $(a_n^{(k)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit $L^{(k)}$, $k = 1, \dots, d$.

Solution to Exercise 2.16. If we look at the first components of the terms of the sequence, we have

$$\frac{n}{4n+2} = \frac{1}{4 + \frac{2}{n}} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{4+0} = \frac{1}{4},$$

by the algebra of limits. If we look at the second components of the terms of the sequence, we have

$$\frac{n^2}{n^2+1} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{n^2}} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1+0} = 1,$$

by the algebra of limits. By the result in Exercise 2.15, we conclude that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit

$$L := \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution to Exercise 2.17. (“If” part) If the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is eventually the constant sequence with all terms equal to c beyond the index N , then clearly $d(a_n, c) = d(c, c) = 0$ for all $n > N$, and so the sequence is convergent with limit c .

(“Only if” part) Suppose that the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit L . With $\epsilon = 1/2$, let $N \in \mathbb{N}$ be such that for all $n > N$, $d(x_n, L) < 1/2$. But then by the definition of the discrete metric, it must be the case that $d(x_n, L) = 0$ (since it cannot be 1!). Thus $x_n = L$ for all $n > N$, that is, the sequence is eventually constant.

Solution to Exercise 2.18. Let $\epsilon > 0$. There exists an $N_1 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N_1$, $d(a_n, a) < \epsilon/2$. Also, there exists an $N_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N_2$, $d(b_n, b) < \epsilon/2$. We have for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ that

$$\begin{aligned} d(a_n, b_n) &\leq d(a_n, a) + d(a, b) + d(b, b_n), \\ d(a, b) &\leq d(a, a_n) + d(a_n, b_n) + d(b_n, b), \end{aligned}$$

and combining these, we have for $n > \max\{N_1, N_2\}$ that

$$|d(a_n, b_n) - d(a, b)| \leq d(a_n, a) + d(b_n, b) < \epsilon/2 + \epsilon/2 = \epsilon.$$

Consequently the real sequence $(d(a_n, b_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit $d(a, b)$.

Solution to Exercise 2.19.

(1) We will use the following simple fact, called the “Arithmetic mean-geometric mean (AM-GM) inequality”. For nonnegative real numbers a, b , we have

$$\frac{a+b}{2} \geq \sqrt{ab},$$

with equality if and only if $a = b$. This is an immediate consequence of the inequality $(\sqrt{a} - \sqrt{b})^2 \geq 0$.

We will prove the first string of inequalities using induction on n . The claim is true for $n = 1$, since we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &< x_1 \quad (\text{given}), \\ x_2 &= \sqrt{x_1 y_1} > \sqrt{x_1 x_1} = x_1 \quad (y_1 > x_1 > 0), \\ y_2 &= \frac{x_1 + y_1}{2} > \sqrt{x_1 y_1} = x_2 \quad (\text{AM-GM inequality and } x_1 \neq y_1), \\ y_2 &= \frac{x_1 + y_1}{2} < \frac{y_1 + y_1}{2} = y_1 \quad (x_1 < y_1). \end{aligned}$$

Thus $0 < x_1 < x_2 < y_2 < y_1$.

Let us now assume that for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $0 < x_n < x_{n+1} < y_{n+1} < y_n$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1} &> 0 \quad (\text{induction hypothesis}), \\ x_{n+2} &= \sqrt{x_{n+1} y_{n+1}} > \sqrt{x_{n+1} x_{n+1}} = x_{n+1} \quad (y_{n+1} > x_{n+1} > 0), \\ y_{n+2} &= \frac{x_{n+1} + y_{n+1}}{2} > \sqrt{x_{n+1} y_{n+1}} = x_{n+2} \quad (\text{AM-GM inequality and } x_{n+1} \neq y_{n+1}), \\ y_{n+2} &= \frac{x_{n+1} + y_{n+1}}{2} < \frac{y_{n+1} + y_{n+1}}{2} = y_{n+1} \quad (x_{n+1} < y_{n+1}). \end{aligned}$$

Thus $0 < x_{n+1} < x_{n+2} < y_{n+2} < y_{n+1}$, completing the induction step. Consequently, the claim holds by induction.

Using $x_{n+1} > x_n$, we also have $y_{n+1} - x_{n+1} < y_{n+1} - x_n = \frac{x_n + y_n}{2} - x_n = \frac{y_n - x_n}{2}$.

(2) Since for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ $x_n < x_{n+1}$, the sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is increasing. Also $y_{n+1} < y_n$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and so the sequence $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is decreasing. In particular, $y_n \leq y_1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. The inequality $x_n < y_n$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) now yields $x_n < y_n \leq y_1$. Thus we have $x_1 \leq x_n \leq y_1$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), and so the sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded. As it is also increasing, it follows from the Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem that it must be convergent.

For the sequence $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, we have $0 < y_n \leq y_1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, showing that it is bounded. It is also decreasing. Again it follows from the Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem that $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent as well.

Finally, we have for all $n > 1$ that

$$|x_n - y_n| < \frac{|x_{n-1} - y_{n-1}|}{2}.$$

Set $L_x := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n$ and $L_y := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} y_n$. Passing the limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$ in $|x_n - y_n| < \frac{|x_{n-1} - y_{n-1}|}{2}$, it follows that

$$|L_x - L_y| \leq \frac{|L_x - L_y|}{2},$$

and so if $|L_x - L_y| \neq 0$, we arrive at the contradiction that $1 < \frac{1}{2}$. Hence $L_x = L_y = c$ (say), that is,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} y_n =: c.$$

Consequently, $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} v_n$ exists, and is equal to (c, c) .

Solution to Exercise 2.24. Let us revisit the construction of the sequence in \mathbb{Q} with limit $\sqrt{2}$ done in part (6) of Exercise 1.35.

Consider the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ given by $a_1 = 3/2$, and for $n > 1$,

$$a_{n+1} = \frac{4 + 3a_n}{3 + 2a_n}.$$

Then it can be shown by induction that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is monotone decreasing and bounded below by $\sqrt{2}$. So this sequence is convergent in \mathbb{R} , and in particular, it is a Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R} . So given any $\epsilon > 0$, there is an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$, $|a_n - a_m| < \epsilon$. As all the terms a_n , $n \in \mathbb{N}$, are rational, it follows that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{Q} .

Next we will show that it cannot converge in \mathbb{Q} . Suppose on the contrary, that it has the limit $r \in \mathbb{Q}$. Thus if $\epsilon > 0$, then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ satisfying $n > N$, we have $|a_n - r| < \epsilon$. So the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is also a convergent sequence in \mathbb{R} with the same limit r . But it then follows from the recursive definition of the sequence that r must satisfy

$$r = \frac{4 + 3r}{3 + 2r},$$

and so $r^2 = 2$. But then r cannot belong to \mathbb{Q} , a contradiction.

So we have shown the existence of a Cauchy sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in \mathbb{Q} which does not converge in \mathbb{Q} . This shows that \mathbb{Q} is not complete.

Solution to Exercise 2.25. First choose an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ so that if $n, m > N$, then $d(x_n, x_m) < \epsilon/2$. Then choose a K large enough so that $n_K > N$ and $d(x_{n_K}, L) < \epsilon/2$. Now for $n > n_K$, we have

$$d(x_n, L) \leq d(x_n, x_{n_K}) + d(x_{n_K}, L) < \epsilon/2 + \epsilon/2 = \epsilon.$$

Thus $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit L .

Solution to Exercise 2.27. Let $(M^{(k)})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a Cauchy sequence in $(\mathbb{R}^{n \times m}, \|\cdot\|_\infty)$. We have the inequalities

$$|M_{ij}^{(k)} - M_{ij}^{(\ell)}| \leq \|M^{(k)} - M^{(\ell)}\|_\infty \quad (k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}, 1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m),$$

from which it follows that each of the sequences $(M_{ij}^{(k)})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy in \mathbb{R} , and hence convergent, with respective limits, say M_{ij} , $1 \leq i \leq n$, $1 \leq j \leq m$. So given $\epsilon > 0$, there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $n > N$, we have

$$|M_{ij}^{(k)} - M_{ij}| < \epsilon \quad (1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m).$$

Set M to be the matrix with the entry in the i th row and j th column as M_{ij} , for $1 \leq i \leq n$, $1 \leq j \leq m$. Thus for $n > N$, we have

$$\|M^{(k)} - M\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m} |M_{ij}^{(k)} - M_{ij}| < \epsilon.$$

So the Cauchy sequence $(M^{(k)})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit M . Hence $(\mathbb{R}^{n \times m}, \|\cdot\|_\infty)$ is complete.

Solution to Exercise 2.29. Let $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$. Since the functions f_n and f_m coincide in the intervals $[0, \frac{1}{2}]$ and $[\frac{1}{2} + \max\{\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{m+1}\}, 1]$, we have

$$\|f_n - f_m\|_1 = \int_0^1 |f_n(x) - f_m(x)| dx = \int_{\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2} + \max\{\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{m+1}\}} |f_n(x) - f_m(x)| dx.$$

In the interval $[\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2} + \max\{\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{m+1}\}]$, we can estimate the last integral above using the fact that $|f_n(x) - f_m(x)| \leq |f_n(x)| + |f_m(x)| \leq 1 + 1 = 2$, to obtain

$$\|f_n - f_m\|_1 = \int_{\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2} + \max\{\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{m+1}\}} |f_n(x) - f_m(x)| dx \leq \int_{\frac{1}{2}}^{\frac{1}{2} + \max\{\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{m+1}\}} 2 dx \leq 2 \max\left\{\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{m+1}\right\}.$$

Given $\epsilon > 0$, we can choose an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ large enough so that $N > 2/\epsilon$, so that whenever $m, n > N$, we obtain from the above that

$$\|f_n - f_m\|_1 \leq 2 \max\left\{\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{m+1}\right\} \leq \frac{2}{N} < \epsilon.$$

Consequently, the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy in $C[0, 1]$.

Now we show that the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is not convergent in $C[0, 1]$. Suppose, on that contrary, that it is convergent with limit $f \in C[0, 1]$. We have

$$\|f_n - f\|_1 = \int_0^{\frac{1}{2}} |f(x)| dx + \int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1 |f_n(x) - f(x)| dx.$$

In particular, $0 \leq \int_0^{\frac{1}{2}} |f(x)| dx \leq \|f_n - f\|_1$, and since $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|f_n - f\|_1 = 0$, we obtain

$$\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}} |f(x)| dx = 0.$$

As f is a continuous function, it follows that $|f(x)| = 0$ for all x in $[0, \frac{1}{2}]$, and so $f(x) = 0$ for all x in $[0, \frac{1}{2}]$. We will now show that $f(x) = 1$ for all x in $(\frac{1}{2}, 1]$. Suppose that $y \in (\frac{1}{2}, 1]$. Then we can choose a large N such that $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{N+1} < y$. Consequently, for all $n > N$, we have

$$\|f_n - f\|_1 = \int_{\frac{1}{2}}^y |f_n(x) - f(x)| dx + \int_y^1 |1 - f(x)| dx.$$

In particular, $0 \leq \int_y^1 |1 - f(x)| dx \leq \|f_n - f\|_1$, and since $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|f_n - f\|_1 = 0$, we obtain

$$\int_y^1 |1 - f(x)| dx = 0.$$

As f is a continuous function, it follows that $|1 - f(x)| = 0$ for all x in $[y, 1]$, and so $f(x) = 1$ for all x in $[y, 1]$. As the choice of $y \in (\frac{1}{2}, 1]$ was arbitrary, it follows that $f(x) = 1$ for all x in $(\frac{1}{2}, 1]$. So we arrive at the conclusion that

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \in [0, \frac{1}{2}], \\ 1 & \text{if } x \in (\frac{1}{2}, 1], \end{cases}$$

which is clearly not continuous at $\frac{1}{2}$. This is a contradiction to our assumption that $f \in C[0, 1]$. So the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is not convergent in $C[0, 1]$.

Solution to Exercise 2.30. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a Cauchy sequence in X . Then with $\epsilon := \frac{1}{2}$, there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $m, n > N$, we have $d(a_n, a_m) < \epsilon = \frac{1}{2}$. But since the discrete metric assumes only the values 0 or 1, it follows that for $n, m > N$, $d(a_n, a_m) = 0$, and so in fact $a_n = a_m$. Thus the sequence is eventually a constant sequence, and is convergent.

Solution to Exercise 2.31. Let $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{Z} . Then with $\epsilon := \frac{1}{2}$, there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $m, n > N$, we have $|a_n - a_m| < \epsilon = \frac{1}{2}$. But since a_n, a_m are integers, $a_n - a_m$ is also an integer, and if it were nonzero, we would have $|a_n - a_m| \geq 1$. Thus for $n, m > N$, $|a_n - a_m| = 0$, and so in fact $a_n = a_m$. Thus the sequence is eventually a constant sequence, and is convergent.

Solution to Exercise 2.34. (“If” part) Suppose that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $n > N$, $|a_n - 0| < \epsilon$. As $a_n \geq 0$, we have that $a_n < \epsilon$ for all $n > N$. But by the definition of a_n , this means that for any $x \in X$,

$$|f_n(x) - f(x)| \leq a_n < \epsilon.$$

Hence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is uniformly convergent to f .

(“Only if” part) Now suppose that $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is uniformly convergent to f . Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that whenever $n > N$, we have for all $x \in X$, $|f_n(x) - f(x)| < \epsilon$. But this says that ϵ is an upper bound for the set $\{|f_n(x) - f(x)| : x \in X\}$. By the definition of the least upper bound, it now follows that $a_n \leq \epsilon$. Since a_n is nonnegative, it follows that $|a_n - 0| = |a_n| = a_n \leq \epsilon$ for all $n > N$. In other words, the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0.

For a fixed $x \in (0, \infty)$, we have

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(x) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x e^{-nx} = x \cdot \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} e^{-nx} = x \cdot 0 = 0.$$

So the pointwise limit of $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is the function f which is identically zero on $(0, \infty)$. We now show that the convergence is uniform by using the result proved above.

We have to calculate or at least find a good upper bound to

$$a_n := \sup\{|f_n(x) - f(x)| : x \in (0, \infty)\} = \sup_{x \in (0, \infty)} x e^{-nx}.$$

There are various ways to do this.

The most straightforward “calculus” method is to find the extreme values of $x e^{-nx}$ over the interval $(0, \infty)$. We calculate $\frac{d}{dx} x e^{-nx} = e^{-nx} - n x e^{-nx} = e^{-nx}(1 - nx)$, so $\frac{d}{dx} x e^{-nx} > 0$ iff $1 - nx > 0$ iff $x < 1/n$, and similarly, $\frac{d}{dx} x e^{-nx} < 0$ iff $x > 1/n$. Therefore, the function $(0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, $x \mapsto x e^{-nx}$ is strictly increasing on $(0, 1/n)$ and strictly decreasing on $(1/n, \infty)$, so it attains a global maximum at $x = 1/n$ with maximum value $(1/n)e^{-n \cdot 1/n} = 1/(ne)$. Therefore,

$$a_n = \sup_{x \in (0, \infty)} x e^{-nx} = \frac{1}{ne} \rightarrow 0$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Hence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly to the function which is identically zero on $(0, \infty)$.

Another method is to use the inequality $e^x \geq 1 + x$, which is valid for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, as can be seen by calculating the minimum value of $e^x - x$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Thus, $e^{nx} \geq 1 + nx$, hence

$$x e^{-nx} \leq \frac{x}{1 + nx} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{x} + n} < \frac{1}{n}, \text{ (since } x > 0\text{)}$$

and we obtain that $0 \leq a_n < 1/n$. By the Sandwich Theorem it follows that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$, and we can conclude as before that (f_n) converges uniformly to the zero function.

Solution to Exercise 2.35. We will show that $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly to the function which is identically 0 on $[0, 1]$. We have for all $x \in [0, 1]$ that

$$|f_n(x) - 0| = \frac{x}{1 + nx} = \frac{1}{n} \cdot \frac{nx}{1 + nx} < \frac{1}{n} \cdot 1.$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $N > 1/\epsilon$. Then whenever $n > N$, we have for all $x \in [0, 1]$ that

$$|f_n(x) - 0| < \frac{1}{n} < \frac{1}{N} < \epsilon.$$

Consequently, $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges uniformly to the function which is identically zero on $[0, 1]$.

Solution to Exercise 2.36. If $x \neq 0$, then

$$0 < \frac{1}{1 + x^2} < 1,$$

and so

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(x) = 1 - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{1}{1 + x^2} \right)^n = 1 - 0 = 1.$$

On the other hand,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(0) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{(1 + 0^2)^n} \right) = 1 - 1 = 0.$$

So the sequence $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges pointwise to f . Clearly f is discontinuous at 0: for example, the sequence $(\frac{1}{n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0, but the sequence $(f(\frac{1}{n}))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (1)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $1 \neq 0 = f(0)$.

Solution to Exercise 2.37. We have

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} a_{m,n} = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m}{m+n} = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1 + \frac{n}{m}} = \frac{1}{1+0} = 1.$$

On the other hand,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_{m,n} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{m}{m+n} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\frac{m}{n}}{\frac{m}{n} + 1} = \frac{0}{0+1} = 0.$$

Hence

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_{m,n} = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} 0 = 0 \neq 1 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 1 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} a_{m,n}.$$

Solution to Exercise 2.38. We have for $x \in \mathbb{R}$ that

$$|f_n(x) - f(x)| = |f_n(x)| = \frac{|\sin(nx)|}{\sqrt{n}} \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}.$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Choose an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $N > 1/\epsilon^2$. Then whenever $n > N$, we have for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ that

$$|f_n(x) - f(x)| \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} < \epsilon.$$

Consequently, $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges pointwise (in fact even uniformly!) to the function f which is identically zero on \mathbb{R} .

We have

$$f'_n(x) := \frac{d}{dx} f_n(x) = \frac{n \cos(nx)}{\sqrt{n}} = \sqrt{n} \cos(nx).$$

f' on the other hand is identically 0 on \mathbb{R} . If we look at $x = 0$, we have $(f'_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (\sqrt{n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is clearly unbounded, and thus not convergent. Hence $(f'_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is not pointwise convergent (to f').

Solution to Exercise 2.39. If $x = 0$ or $x = 1$, $f_n(x) = 0$, and so $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (0)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit 0 ($= f(x)$). Now suppose that $x \in (0, 1)$. Then $0 < 1 - x^2 < 1$. So we can find a positive number h such that $1 - x^2 = 1/(1+h)$. By the binomial expansion for $(1+h)^n$, we have the inequality $(1+h)^n > n(n-1)h^2$, which yields

$$0 < nx(1-x^2)^n < \frac{nx}{n(n-1)h^2}.$$

Thus by the Sandwich Theorem we obtain that $(f_n(x))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0. Consequently $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges pointwise to the zero function f on $[0, 1]$.

Using the variable substitution $u = x^2$, we see that

$$\int_0^1 f_n(x) dx = \int_0^1 nx(1-x^2)^n dx = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^1 nu^n du = \frac{1}{2} \frac{n}{n+1}.$$

Thus

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^1 f_n(x) dx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2} \frac{n}{n+1} = \frac{1}{2} \neq 0 = \int_0^1 f(x) dx = \int_0^1 \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(x) dx.$$

Solution to Exercise 2.41.

- (1) Let
- $(x^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$
- be a sequence such that
- $x^{(n)}$
- belongs to
- H
- for each
- $n \in \mathbb{N}$
- , and suppose that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x^{(n)} = L = \begin{bmatrix} L_1 \\ \vdots \\ L_d \end{bmatrix}$$

in \mathbb{R}^d . If $x_1^{(n)}, \dots, x_d^{(n)}$ are the components of $x^{(n)}$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$, then we have

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_i^{(n)} = L_i \quad (i = 1, \dots, d).$$

Since $x^{(n)}$ belongs to H for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we also have

$$a_1 x_1^{(n)} + \dots + a_d x_d^{(n)} = a^\top x^{(n)} = \beta \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}),$$

where a_1, \dots, a_d denote the components of a . Passing the limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$, we obtain

$$a^\top L = a_1 L_1 + \dots + a_d L_d = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (a_1 x_1^{(n)} + \dots + a_d x_d^{(n)}) = \beta,$$

and so $L \in H$. Hence H is closed, by the characterization of closed sets given in Theorem 2.40.

- (2) Let
- $r_1, \dots, r_m \in \mathbb{R}^n$
- be vectors such that
- $r_1^\top, \dots, r_m^\top$
- are the rows of the matrix
- A
- . Also, let
- b_1, \dots, b_m
- denote the components of
- b
- . Then it is clear that the equation
- $Ax = b$
- is satisfied by a vector
- $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$
- if and only if it satisfies
- $r_1^\top x = b_1, \dots, r_m^\top x = b_m$
- . Thus

$$S = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : Ax = b\} = \bigcap_{i=1}^m \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : r_i^\top x = b_i\}.$$

Hence S is a finite intersection of the closed subspaces $H_i := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : r_i^\top x = b_i\}$, $i = 1, \dots, m$, and so it follows that S is closed.

- (3) We first show that the set
- $\Pi := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_1 \geq 0, \dots, x_n \geq 0\}$
- is closed. Let
- $(x^{(k)})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$
- be a sequence such that
- $x^{(k)}$
- belongs to
- Π
- for each
- $k \in \mathbb{N}$
- , and suppose that

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} x^{(k)} = L = \begin{bmatrix} L_1 \\ \vdots \\ L_n \end{bmatrix}$$

in \mathbb{R}^n . If $x_1^{(k)}, \dots, x_n^{(k)}$ are the components of $x^{(k)}$, $k \in \mathbb{N}$, then we have

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} x_i^{(k)} = L_i \quad (i = 1, \dots, n).$$

Since $x^{(k)}$ belongs to Π for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$, we also have

$$x_1^{(k)} \geq 0, \dots, x_n^{(k)} \geq 0 \quad (k \in \mathbb{N}).$$

Passing the limit as $k \rightarrow \infty$, these inequalities yield

$$L_1 \geq 0, \dots, L_n \geq 0,$$

and so $L \in \Pi$. Hence Π is closed, by the characterization of closed sets given in Theorem 2.40.

Since Σ is the intersection of the two closed sets Π and S , it now follows that Σ is closed too.

Solution to Exercise 2.46. “ \implies ”: We are given that $S \subseteq X$ is bounded, that is, $\exists M > 0$ such that $\forall x, y \in S$, $d(x, y) \leq M$. We have to find an $R > 0$ such that for all $x \in S$, $d(x, x_0) \leq R$.

Choose some fixed $x_1 \in S$. (Note that if $S = \emptyset$, then there is nothing to prove.)

Set $R = M + d(x_0, x_1)$. Since $M > 0$ and $d(x_0, x_1) \geq 0$, also $R > 0$.

Let $x \in S$ be given. Then

$$\begin{aligned} d(x, x_0) &\leq d(x, x_1) + d(x_1, x_0) \quad (\text{triangle inequality in } X) \\ &\leq M + d(x_1, x_0) \quad (\text{since } x, x_1 \in S) \\ &= R. \end{aligned} \quad \square$$

“ \impliedby ”: Now we are given that $\exists R > 0$ such that $\forall x \in S$, $d(x, x_0) \leq R$, and we have to find a $M > 0$ such that $\forall x, y \in S$, $d(x, y) \leq M$.

Set $M = 2R$. Since $R > 0$, also $M > 0$.

Let $x, y \in S$ be given. Then again by the triangle inequality,

$$d(x, y) \leq d(x, x_0) + d(x_0, y) \leq R + R = M. \quad \square$$

Solution to Exercise 2.53.

- (1) False. As a counterexample take $S = \mathbb{R}$. Any subsequence of any convergent sequence in \mathbb{R} will have a limit in \mathbb{R} , and yet \mathbb{R} is not compact. The reason \mathbb{R} is not compact is that there exist sequences in \mathbb{R} without any convergent subsequence, such as $(n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$.

More generally, any closed $S \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ will have the property that each convergent sequence in S has a convergent subsequence with limit in S , because the subsequence will have the same limit, and will be in S because S is closed.

- (2) False. It is not given that the closed and bounded sets under consideration are in \mathbb{R} . As a counterexample take \mathbb{N} with the discrete metric: for any $x, y \in \mathbb{N}$ define $d(x, y) = 1$ when $x \neq y$ and $d(x, y) = 0$ when $x = y$. Then \mathbb{N} itself is closed and bounded, but is not compact, since the sequence $(n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not have a convergent subsequence. (There are many other counterexamples, such as the set $\{f \in C[a, b] : \|f\|_\infty \leq 1\}$ in $C[a, b]$.)
- (3) True. Let K be a compact subset of X . Considered as a subset of the metric space X , that K is compact means that any sequence in K has a convergent (in X) subsequence with limit in K . A subsequence being convergent to, say, $L \in K \subseteq X$ also means that it is convergent in Y , since $L \in Y$. Therefore, any sequence in K has a convergent (in Y) subsequence with limit in K .

The moral is that being compact is a property that depends only on the set K and the values of the metric on elements of K , not on the underlying space that contains K .

Solution to Exercise 2.54. Since K is compact in \mathbb{R}^d , it is closed and bounded. Let $R > 0$ be such that for all $x \in K$, $\|x\|_2 \leq R$. In particular, for every $x \in K \cap F$, we have $\|x\|_2 \leq R$. Thus $K \cap F$ is bounded. Also, since both K and F are closed, it follows that even $K \cap F$ is closed. Hence $K \cap F$ is closed and bounded, and so by Theorem 2.49, we can conclude that $K \cap F$ is compact.

Solution to Exercise 2.55. Clearly \mathbb{S}^{d-1} is bounded. It is also closed, and we prove this below. Let $(x^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in \mathbb{S}^{d-1} which converges to L in \mathbb{R}^d . Let

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} L_1 \\ \vdots \\ L_d \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad x^{(n)} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1^{(n)} \\ \vdots \\ x_d^{(n)} \end{bmatrix} \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}).$$

Then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_i^{(n)} = L_i$ ($i = 1, \dots, d$). Since $x^{(n)}$ belongs to \mathbb{S}^{d-1} for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$\|x^{(n)}\|_2^2 = (x_1^{(n)})^2 + \dots + (x_d^{(n)})^2 = 1.$$

Passing the limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$, we obtain

$$\|L\|_2^2 = L_1^2 + \dots + L_d^2 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left((x_1^{(n)})^2 + \dots + (x_d^{(n)})^2 \right) = 1.$$

Hence $L \in \mathbb{S}^{d-1}$. So \mathbb{S}^{d-1} is closed. As \mathbb{S}^{d-1} is closed and bounded, it follows from Theorem 2.49 that it is compact.

Solution to Exercise 2.56. Let

$$K := \left\{ 1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \dots \right\} \cup \{0\}.$$

Since $K \subseteq [0, 1]$, clearly K is bounded. Moreover, we have

$$\mathbb{R} \setminus K = (-\infty, 0) \cup \left(\bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{n+1}, \frac{1}{n} \right) \right) \cup (1, \infty),$$

which is open, since it is the union of open intervals. Hence its complement, namely the set K , is closed. Since K is closed and bounded, it is compact.

Solution to Exercise 2.57. Consider the sequence $(nI)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ in $GL(m, \mathbb{R})$. Then we have for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ that

$$\|nI\|_\infty = n,$$

and so the sequence $(nI)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not have a convergent subsequence. (For if it did, then the subsequence would be bounded in particular, but no subsequence of $(nI)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ can be bounded.) So $GL(m, \mathbb{R})$ is not compact.

We now show that the set $O(m, \mathbb{R})$ of orthogonal matrices is compact. Let $(A^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in $O(m, \mathbb{R})$. Using $(A^{(n)})^\top A^{(n)} = I_m$, we see that

$$\sum_{i=1}^m (a_{ij}^{(n)})^2 = 1 \quad (1 \leq j \leq m),$$

and so each of the sequences $(a_{ij}^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded. So if we look at the sequence $(a_{11}^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, this has a convergent subsequence, say $(a_{11}^{(n_k)})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$. Now look at the sequence $(a_{12}^{(n_k)})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$. As it is bounded, it has a convergent subsequence too. Proceeding in this manner, we will get a subsequence of $(A^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that if we look at any (i, j) th entry, the corresponding sequence in \mathbb{R} is convergent, with limit say L_{ij} , and so this subsequence of $(A^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with the limit L , where the (i, j) th entry of L is L_{ij} . From $(A^{(n)})^\top A^{(n)} = I_m$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), it follows that also $L^\top L = I_m$, showing that $L \in O(m, \mathbb{R})$.

Solution to Exercise 2.58. We first show that H is closed. Let $x_n = (x_1^{(n)}, x_2^{(n)}) \in H$ be a sequence that converges to $L = (L_1, L_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. Since $x_n \in H$, we have that $x_1^{(n)} x_2^{(n)} = 1$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Taking limits we obtain that

$$1 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_1^{(n)} x_2^{(n)} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_1^{(n)} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_2^{(n)} = L_1 L_2.$$

Since $L_1 L_2 = 1$, it follows that $L \in H$. This shows (by Theorem 2.40) that H is closed.

We next show that H is not bounded. Suppose that there exists $R > 0$ such that $\|x\|_2 \leq R$ for all $x \in H$. Since $(R, 1/R) \in H$, it would then follow that $\|(R, 1/R)\|_2 \leq R$. However, $\|(R, 1/R)\|_2 = \sqrt{R^2 + (1/R)^2} > \sqrt{R^2} = R$, a contradiction.

Finally, it follows that H is not compact, since otherwise (by Theorem 2.49) H would be closed **and** bounded, while we have shown to the contrary that H is unbounded.

Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 3

Solution to Exercise 3.3. We have

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2n^2} = \tan^{-1} \frac{(2n+1) - (2n-1)}{1 + (2n+1)(2n-1)} = \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2n-1} - \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2n+1},$$

and so the partial sums telescope to give

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2n^2} = \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{1} - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2n+1} = \frac{\pi}{4} - 0 = \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

Solution to Exercise 3.4. We have

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{1-x} + \frac{1}{1+x} + \frac{2}{1+x^2} + \frac{4}{1+x^4} + \cdots + \frac{2^n}{1+x^{2^n}} \\ &= \frac{2}{1-x^2} + \frac{2}{1+x^2} + \frac{4}{1+x^4} + \cdots + \frac{2^n}{1+x^{2^n}} \\ &= \frac{4}{1-x^4} + \frac{4}{1+x^4} + \cdots + \frac{2^n}{1+x^{2^n}} \\ & \quad \vdots \\ &= \frac{2^n}{1-x^{2^n}} + \frac{2^n}{1+x^{2^n}} = \frac{2^{n+1}}{1-x^{2^{n+1}}}. \end{aligned}$$

Since $x > 1$, we can write $x = 1 + h$ with $h > 0$, and so for integers $k > 2$ we have

$$x^k = (1+h)^k > \binom{k}{2} h^2 = \frac{k \cdot (k-1)}{2} h^2.$$

Thus

$$0 < \frac{k}{x^k} < \frac{2}{(k-1) \cdot h^2},$$

and so by the Sandwich Theorem,

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \frac{k}{x^k} = 0.$$

Hence for $x > 1$, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{1-x} + \frac{1}{1+x} + \frac{2}{1+x^2} + \frac{4}{1+x^4} + \cdots + \frac{2^n}{1+x^{2^n}} + \cdots = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2^{n+1}}{1-x^{2^{n+1}}} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\frac{2^{n+1}}{x^{2^{n+1}}}}{\frac{1}{x^{2^{n+1}}} - 1} = \frac{0}{0-1} = 0,$$

and so

$$\frac{1}{1+x} + \frac{2}{1+x^2} + \frac{4}{1+x^4} + \cdots + \frac{2^n}{1+x^{2^n}} + \cdots = \frac{1}{x-1}.$$

Solution to Exercise 3.7. The sequence $(1/n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit 0. The function $\cos : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous. Since continuous functions preserve convergence of sequences, it follows that $(\cos(1/n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit $\cos 0 = 1$. By Proposition 3.6, we can conclude that since

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \cos\left(\frac{1}{n}\right) = 1 \neq 0,$$

the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos\left(\frac{1}{n}\right)$ does not converge.

Solution to Exercise 3.11. Let $s_n := a_1 + \cdots + a_n$ denote the n th partial sum of the series for $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Since the series converges, $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to some limit L . So the sequence $(s_{2n} - s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $L - L = 0$. We have

$$s_{2n} - s_n = a_{n+1} + \cdots + a_{2n} \geq \underbrace{a_{2n} + \cdots + a_{2n}}_{n \text{ times}} = n \cdot a_{2n} \geq 0.$$

Thus by the Sandwich Theorem, we obtain $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n \cdot a_{2n} = 0$. Hence also

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} 2na_{2n} = 0. \tag{6.1}$$

Also, the sequence $(s_{2n+1} - s_{n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $L - L = 0$. We have

$$s_{2n+1} - s_n = a_{n+2} + \cdots + a_{2n+1} \geq \underbrace{a_{2n+1} + \cdots + a_{2n+1}}_{n \text{ times}} = n \cdot a_{2n+1} \geq 0.$$

Thus by the Sandwich Theorem, we obtain $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n \cdot a_{2n+1} = 0$. As the sequence $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0, we also have that $(a_{2n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0. Hence we obtain

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (2n+1)a_{2n+1} = 2 \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} na_{2n+1} + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_{2n+1} = 2 \cdot 0 + 0 = 0. \quad (6.2)$$

It follows now from (6.1) and (6.2) that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} na_n = 0$.

In order to show that the assumption $a_1 \geq a_2 \geq a_3 \dots$ cannot be dropped, we consider the *lacunary series* whose n^2 th term is $1/n^2$ and all other terms are zero:

$$a_1 = \frac{1}{1^2}, a_2 = a_3 = 0, a_{2^2} = \frac{1}{2^2}, a_{2^2+1} = \cdots = a_{3^2-1} = 0, a_{3^2} = \frac{1}{3^2}, \dots$$

The sequence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of partial sums is clearly increasing since $a_n \geq 0$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. We have

$$s_{n^2} = \frac{1}{1^2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^2},$$

which is the n th partial sum of the convergent series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2}.$$

It thus follows from the convergence of $(s_{n^2})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ that $(s_{n^2})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded, and so also $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is bounded too (after all, given any $m \in \mathbb{N}$, there is a perfect square N^2 exceeding it, so that $s_m \leq s_{N^2} \leq M$, where M is a bound for the sequence $(s_{n^2})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$). As the sequence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is monotone and bounded, it is convergent (by the Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem). Note however that the sequence $(na_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ has as a subsequence $(n^2 a_{n^2})_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (n^2 \frac{1}{n^2})_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (1)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, and so it follows that $(na_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not converge to 0.

Solution to Exercise 3.14. Since $-1 \leq \sin n \leq 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$\left| \frac{\sin n}{n^2} \right| \leq \frac{1}{n^2} \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}).$$

Thus the sequence $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of the partial sums of the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left| \frac{\sin n}{n^2} \right|$ is bounded:

$$s_n \leq \frac{1}{1^2} + \frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n^2} \leq \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} < +\infty.$$

Moreover, it is an increasing sequence, and so by the Bolzano-Weierstrass Theorem $(s_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent, that is,

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left| \frac{\sin n}{n^2} \right| < +\infty.$$

It now follows from Theorem 3.12 that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin n}{n^2}$ converges too.

(When we learn the ‘‘Comparison Test’’ (Theorem 3.20) later, we can give a one line justification.)

Solution to Exercise 3.17. We have

- (1) $a_n := \frac{1}{n^s} \geq 0$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
- (2) As $s > 0$, $(n+1)^s > n^s$ and so $\frac{1}{n^s} > \frac{1}{(n+1)^s}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
- (3) $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n^s} = 0$.

Thus by the Leibniz Alternating Series Theorem $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^s}$ converges.

Solution to Exercise 3.18. We have

- (1) $a_n := \frac{\sqrt{n}}{n+1} \geq 0$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
- (2) (We want to know if for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\frac{\sqrt{n}}{n+1} \geq \frac{\sqrt{n+1}}{n+2}$. In order to see this, we square both sides, and rearrange terms to arrive at the equivalent inequality $n^2 + n \geq 1$, which is clearly true.)
We note that for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n^2 + n \geq 1$, and so

$$n(n+2)^2 = n^3 + 4n^2 + 4n \geq n^3 + 3n^2 + 3n + 1 = (n+1)^3.$$

Rearranging, we obtain

$$\frac{n}{(n+1)^2} \geq \frac{n+1}{(n+2)^2},$$

and finally, taking square roots, we obtain $\frac{\sqrt{n}}{n+1} \geq \frac{\sqrt{n+1}}{n+2}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

- (3) $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\sqrt{n}}{n+1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}}{1 + \frac{1}{n}} = \frac{0}{1+0} = 0$.

Thus by the Leibniz Alternating Series Theorem $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{\sqrt{n}}{n+1}$ converges.

Solution to Exercise 3.19. We have

- (1) We know that $\sin x \geq 0$ for all $x \in [0, \pi]$. Since $0 \leq \frac{1}{n} \leq 1 < \pi$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, it follows that $a_n := \sin \frac{1}{n} \geq 0$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
- (2) The function $x \mapsto \sin x$ defined on $[0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ is (strictly) increasing. Since $0 < \frac{1}{n+1} < \frac{1}{n} < 1 < \frac{\pi}{2}$, it follows that $\sin \frac{1}{n+1} < \sin \frac{1}{n}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
- (3) Finally, the function $x \mapsto \sin x : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous, and the sequence $(\frac{1}{n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit 0, and so it follows that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sin \frac{1}{n} = \sin \left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} \right) = \sin 0 = 0.$$

Thus by the Leibniz Alternating Series Theorem $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \sin \frac{1}{n}$ converges.

Solution to Exercise 3.25. We will use the Ratio Test in each part.

- (1) We have that $a_n := \frac{n^2}{2^n} \neq 0$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and

$$\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = \frac{(n+1)^2}{2^{n+1}} \cdot \frac{2^n}{n^2} = \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n} \right)^2,$$

and so $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n} \right)^2 = \frac{1}{2} (1+0)^2 = \frac{1}{2} < 1$. Thus the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^2}{2^n}$$

converges (absolutely).

(2) We have that $a_n := \frac{(n!)^2}{(2n)!} \neq 0$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and

$$\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = \frac{((n+1)!)^2}{(2n+2)!} \cdot \frac{(2n)!}{(n!)^2} = \frac{(n+1)^2}{(2n+1)(2n+2)} = \frac{n+1}{2(2n+1)} = \frac{1 + \frac{1}{n}}{2(2 + \frac{1}{n})},$$

and so $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1 + \frac{1}{n}}{2(2 + \frac{1}{n})} = \frac{1+0}{2(2+0)} = \frac{1}{4} < 1$. Thus the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(n!)^2}{(2n)!}$$

converges (absolutely).

(3) We have that $a_n := \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^n n^5 \neq 0$ for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and

$$\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^{n+1} (n+1)^5 \cdot \left(\frac{5}{4}\right)^n \frac{1}{n^5} = \frac{4}{5} \left(\frac{n+1}{n}\right)^5 = \frac{4}{5} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^5,$$

and so $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{4}{5} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^5 = \frac{4}{5} (1+0)^5 = \frac{4}{5} < 1$. Thus the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^n n^5$$

converges (absolutely).

Solution to Exercise 3.26. We have that $\frac{n}{n^4 + n^2 + 1} \leq \frac{n}{n^4} = \frac{1}{n^3}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Since $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^3} < +\infty$,

it follows from the Comparison Test that also $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{n^4 + n^2 + 1}$ converges.

We have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{n^4 + n^2 + 1} &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{(n^2 + 1)^2 - n^2} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{(n^2 + 1 - n)(n^2 + 1 + n)} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{n^2 + 1 - n} - \frac{1}{n^2 + 1 + n} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{(n-1) \cdot n + 1} - \frac{1}{n \cdot (n+1) + 1} \right). \end{aligned}$$

But the partial sum of this last series is the “telescoping sum”

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{1}{0 \cdot 1 + 1} - \frac{1}{1 \cdot 2 + 1} + \frac{1}{1 \cdot 2 + 1} - \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3 + 1} + \cdots + \frac{1}{(n-1) \cdot n + 1} - \frac{1}{n \cdot (n+1) + 1} \\ &= 1 - \frac{1}{n \cdot (n+1) + 1}. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n}{n^4 + n^2 + 1} = \frac{1}{2} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 - \frac{1}{n \cdot (n+1) + 1} \right) = \frac{1}{2}$.

Solution to Exercise 3.27. Since the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^4$ converges, we have necessarily that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n^4 = 0.$$

But then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n|^4 = 0$ as well, and so it follows from here that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| = 0.$$

Thus there is an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$, $|a_n| < 1$. But now for $n > N$,

$$|a_n^5| = a_n^4 |a_n| < a_n^4,$$

and so it follows from the Comparison Test that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^5$ converges too.

Solution to Exercise 3.28. Clearly numbers n such that $10^{k-1} \leq n < 10^k$ have k digits. If we are to avoid the digit 9 in any of these places, then we see that the first digit can only be 1, 2, 3, ..., 7, 8, while the rest can be any of the digits 0, 1, 2, 3, ..., 7, 8. Thus the total number of allowed numbers is $8 \cdot 9^{k-1}$.

Thus in our series $\sum' \frac{1}{n^p}$, there are

$$\begin{array}{ll} 8 & \text{terms with } \frac{1}{10^p} < \frac{1}{n^p} \leq \frac{1}{1^p}, \\ 8 \cdot 9 & \text{terms with } \frac{1}{10^{2p}} < \frac{1}{n^p} \leq \frac{1}{10^p}, \\ 8 \cdot 9^2 & \text{terms with } \frac{1}{10^{3p}} < \frac{1}{n^p} \leq \frac{1}{10^{2p}}, \\ & \vdots \\ 8 \cdot 9^{k-1} & \text{terms with } \frac{1}{10^{kp}} < \frac{1}{n^p} \leq \frac{1}{10^{(k-1)p}}, \\ & \vdots \end{array}$$

Thus

$$8 \left(\frac{1}{10^p} + \frac{9}{10^{2p}} + \frac{9^2}{10^{3p}} + \dots \right) < \sum' \frac{1}{n^p} \leq 8 \left(\frac{1}{1^p} + \frac{9}{10^p} + \frac{9^2}{10^{2p}} + \frac{9^3}{10^{3p}} + \dots \right). \quad (6.3)$$

We now have the following:

1° $p > \log_{10} 9$. Then $9 < 10^p$ and so $\frac{9}{10^p} < 1$. Thus the geometric series on the right hand side of (6.3) converges. So by the Comparison Test, $\sum' \frac{1}{n^p}$ converges as well.

2° $p \leq \log_{10} 9$. Then $9 \geq 10^p$ and so $\frac{9}{10^p} \geq 1$. Thus the geometric series on the left hand side of (6.3) diverges. So by the Comparison Test, $\sum' \frac{1}{n^p}$ diverges as well.

Solution to Exercise 3.30.

(1) Let $\epsilon > 0$. Since the series

$$S := \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n| + |b_n|$$

is convergent, there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$,

$$\left| \sum_{k=1}^n (|a_k| + |b_k|) - S \right| = \sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} (|a_k| + |b_k|) < \epsilon.$$

As

$$\left| a_k \cos \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) + b_k \sin \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) \right| \leq |a_k| \left| \cos \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) \right| + |b_k| \left| \sin \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) \right| \leq |a_k| \cdot 1 + |b_k| \cdot 1,$$

we have that

$$\sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} \left| a_k \cos \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) + b_k \sin \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) \right| \leq \sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} (|a_k| \cdot 1 + |b_k| \cdot 1) < \epsilon.$$

Thus if $n > N$, then for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| f(x) - \left(a_0 + \sum_{k=1}^n \left(a_k \cos \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) + b_k \sin \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) \right) \right) \right| \\ &= \left| \sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} a_k \cos \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) + b_k \sin \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) \right| \\ &\leq \sum_{k=n+1}^{\infty} \left| a_k \cos \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) + b_k \sin \left(\frac{2\pi k}{T} x \right) \right| < \epsilon. \end{aligned}$$

This shows that the Fourier series converges uniformly to f .

(2) The plots are displayed on page 38. From the plots, we do see that the partial sum functions look increasingly like the square wave, but we also notice the persistent overshoot at the points $-1, 0, 1, 2, 3$, suggesting nonuniform convergence.

Solution to Exercise 3.31. It is clear that if the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges, then so does $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n+1}$. Thus

$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n + a_{n+1}}{2}$ converges too. By the Arithmetic Mean-Geometric Mean inequality

$$\frac{a+b}{2} \geq \sqrt{ab}$$

for nonnegative a, b (this is just a rearrangement of the trivial observation that $(\sqrt{a} - \sqrt{b})^2 \geq 0$), it follows that for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$\sqrt{a_n a_{n+1}} \leq \frac{a_n + a_{n+1}}{2},$$

and so the result follows from the Comparison Test.

Solution to Exercise 3.32. (“If” part) Suppose that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n}{1+a_n}$ converges. Then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{a_n}{1+a_n} = 1 - \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1+a_n} = 0,$$

and so $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1+a_n} = 1$. Thus there exists an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$,

$$\frac{1}{1+a_n} > \frac{1}{2}.$$

But this implies that for $n > N$,

$$\frac{a_n}{1+a_n} \geq \frac{a_n}{2} \quad (\text{note that equality is possible}).$$

By the Comparison Test, it follows that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n}{2}$ converges, and so $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges as well.

(“Only if” part) Suppose that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges. Since the a_n 's are all positive, we have

$$\frac{a_n}{1+a_n} < a_n \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}),$$

and so by the Comparison Test, it follows that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n}{1+a_n}$ converges.

Solution to Exercise 3.33. (This was already covered in Exercise 3.29.(1).) If the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges, we have necessarily that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| = 0$. Thus there is an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$, $|a_n| < 1$. But now for $n > N$, $|a_n^2| = |a_n||a_n| < |a_n|$, and so it follows from the Comparison Test that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2$ converges too. So every element of ℓ^1 belongs to ℓ^2 .

The sequence $(1/n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ belongs to ℓ^2 since

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^2 = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} < +\infty,$$

but it does not belong to ℓ^1 (since the harmonic series diverges). So $\ell^1 \subsetneq \ell^2$.

Solution to Exercise 3.34. We have

$$s_n := 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n} < \underbrace{1 + 1 + 1 + \cdots + 1}_{n \text{ times}} = n,$$

and so $\frac{1}{n} < \frac{1}{s_n}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Hence by the Comparison Test, the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{s_n}$ diverges.

Solution to Exercise 3.35. We have that

$$\sqrt[n]{\frac{1}{n^n}} = \frac{1}{n} \leq \frac{1}{2} = r < 1$$

for all $n \geq 2$. So it follows from the Root Test that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^n}$ converges.

Solution to Exercise 3.5. Define the following partial sums:

$$s_n = \frac{1}{F_0} + \frac{1}{F_2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{F_{2n}},$$

$$t_n = \frac{1}{F_1} + \frac{1}{F_3} + \cdots + \frac{1}{F_{2n+1}}.$$

Then $(s_n)_n$ is the sequence of partial sums of $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F_{2k}}$. Using the hint, we have

$$\frac{1/F_{2(k+1)}}{1/F_{2k}} = \frac{F_{2k}}{F_{2k+2}} \leq \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{for all } k \geq 0,$$

and it follows by the Ratio Test that $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F_{2k}}$ converges. In other words, the sequence $(s_n)_n$ converges.

Also, $(t_n)_n$ is the sequence of partial sums of $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F_{2k+1}}$. Using the ratio test again, it similarly follows

that $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F_{2k+1}}$ converges, and therefore, the sequence $(t_n)_n$ converges.

Now consider the sequence of partial sums of $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{F_k}$:

$$\sigma_n = \frac{1}{F_0} + \frac{1}{F_1} + \cdots + \frac{1}{F_n}$$

Note that $s_n + t_n = \sigma_{2n+1}$ and $s_n + t_{n-1} = \sigma_{2n}$. Therefore,

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sigma_{2n+1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} t_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} s_n + \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} t_{n-1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sigma_{2n}.$$

Thus, (σ_{2n}) and (σ_{2n+1}) converge to the same limit. It follows that (σ_n) converges (see Exercise 2.9(9)).

Solution to Exercise 3.29.

(1) True.

Since the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |a_n|$ converges, we have necessarily that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| = 0.$$

Thus there is an $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n > N$, $|a_n| < 1$. But now for $n > N$,

$$|a_n^2| = |a_n||a_n| \leq |a_n|,$$

and so it follows from the Comparison Test that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n^2$ converges too.

(2) False.

By the Leibniz Alternating Series Theorem, it is easy to check that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}}$$

converges. However, $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left((-1)^n \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \right)^2$ is the harmonic series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$, which is divergent.

(3) False.

The harmonic series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$ is divergent, but $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{n} = 0$.

(4) True.

The partial sums converge to 0, and so the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges to 0, by definition.

(5) False.

The partial sum

$$s_n = \log \frac{2}{1} + \log \frac{3}{2} + \cdots + \log \frac{n+1}{n} = \log \frac{2 \cdot 3 \cdots (n+1)}{1 \cdot 2 \cdots n} = \log(n+1).$$

Since $(\log(n+1))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ diverges, it follows that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \log \frac{n+1}{n}$ diverges.

(6) True.

We know that increasing sequences that are bounded above are convergent. As the sequence of partial sums of the given series is increasing and bounded above, the series is convergent.

(7) True.

Since $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ converges, $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$. This implies that $\left(\frac{1}{a_n} \right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is unbounded, and hence can't

be convergent to 0. So $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{a_n}$ diverges.

Solution to Exercise 3.43. Let $L \neq 0$. We have that for all x such that $|x| < \rho = 1/L$ that there exists a $q < 1$ and a N large enough such that

$$\sqrt[n]{|c_n x^n|} = \sqrt[n]{|c_n|} |x| \leq q < 1$$

for all $n > N$. This is because $\sqrt[n]{|c_n|} |x| \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} L|x| < 1$. (For example take $q = (L|x| + 1)/2 < 1$.) So by the Root Test, the power series converges absolutely for such x .

If $L = 0$, then for any $x \in \mathbb{R}$, we can guarantee that

$$\sqrt[n]{|c_n x^n|} = \sqrt[n]{|c_n|} |x| \leq q < 1$$

for all $n > N$. This is because $\sqrt[n]{|c_n|} |x| \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0|x| = 0 < 1$. (So we may arrange for example that $q = 1/2 < 1$.) So again by the Root Test, the power series converges absolutely for such x .

On the other hand, if $L \neq 0$ and $|x| > 1/L$, then there exists a N large enough such that

$$\sqrt[n]{|c_n x^n|} = \sqrt[n]{|c_n|} |x| > 1$$

for all $n > N$. This is because $\sqrt[n]{|c_n||x|} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} L|x| > 1$. So again by the Root Test, the power series diverges.

Solution to Exercise 3.45.

(1) We have

$$L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{1}{1} \right| = 1,$$

and so the radius of convergence is indeed 1, by Theorem 3.42. When $x = \pm 1$, $x^n = \pm 1$, and so the sequence $(x^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is not convergent with limit 0, and so the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^n$ is not convergent at these points.

(2) We have

$$L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{n^2}{(n+1)^2} \right| = 1,$$

and so the radius of convergence is indeed 1, by Theorem 3.42. When $x = \pm 1$, we have that

$$\left| \frac{x^n}{n^2} \right| = \frac{1}{n^2},$$

and so it follows from the Comparison Test that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n^2}$ is convergent at these points.

(3) We have

$$L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{n}{n+1} \right| = 1,$$

and so the radius of convergence is indeed 1, by Theorem 3.42. When $x = +1$, we have that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$ diverges. On the other hand, when $x = -1$, $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n}$ can be seen to be convergent by the Leibniz Alternating Series Test.

(4) We have

$$L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{n}{n+1} \right| = 1,$$

and so the radius of convergence is indeed 1, by Theorem 3.42. When $x = -1$, we have that the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{x^n}{n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}$ diverges. On the other hand, when $x = 1$, the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{x^n}{n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n}$ can be seen to be convergent by the Leibniz Alternating Series Test.

Solution to Exercise 3.46.

(1) First we note that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{x^{2n-1}}{(2n-1)!} = x \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{x^{2n-2}}{(2n-1)!} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{(x^2)^{n-1}}{(2n-1)!}.$$

We will show that the radius of convergence of the auxiliary series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{y^{n-1}}{(2n-1)!}$$

is infinite, from which it will follow also that the power series in the exercise has infinite radius of convergence. We have

$$L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{(2n+1)!}{(2n+3)!} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{(2n+2)(2n+3)} = 0,$$

and so by Theorem 3.42, the radius of convergence is infinite.

(2) This exercise is similar to the previous one. We have

$$L := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{c_{n+1}}{c_n} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{(2n)!}{(2n+2)!} \right| = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{(2n+1)(2n+2)} = 0,$$

and so by Theorem 3.42, the radius of convergence is infinite.

Solution to Exercise 3.52. The sequence of partial sums of $e^0 = I + \frac{1}{1!}0 + \frac{1}{2!}0^2 + \frac{1}{3!}0^3 + \dots$ is the constant sequence $(I)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and so $e^0 = I$.

The sequence of partial sums of $e^I = I + \frac{1}{1!}I + \frac{1}{2!}I^2 + \frac{1}{3!}I^3 + \dots$ is the sequence

$$\left(\left(1 + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \dots + \frac{1}{n!} \right) I \right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$$

and so we see that $e^I = eI$.

$$\text{Write } \Lambda = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \lambda_n \end{bmatrix}. \text{ Note that for each } k \in \mathbb{N}, \Lambda^k = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1^k & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2^k & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \lambda_n^k \end{bmatrix}.$$

Therefore, the k -th partial sum is

$$\begin{aligned} & I + \frac{1}{1!}\Lambda + \frac{1}{2!}\Lambda^2 + \frac{1}{3!}\Lambda^3 + \dots + \frac{1}{k!}\Lambda^k \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{1!} \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \lambda_n \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{2!} \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1^2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2^2 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \lambda_n^2 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{3!} \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1^3 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2^3 & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \lambda_n^3 \end{bmatrix} + \\ &+ \dots + \frac{1}{k!} \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1^k & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2^k & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \lambda_n^k \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 + \frac{1}{1!}\lambda_1 + \frac{1}{2!}\lambda_1^2 + \frac{1}{3!}\lambda_1^3 + \dots + \frac{1}{k!}\lambda_1^k & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 + \frac{1}{1!}\lambda_2 + \frac{1}{2!}\lambda_2^2 + \frac{1}{3!}\lambda_2^3 + \dots + \frac{1}{k!}\lambda_2^k & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 + \frac{1}{1!}\lambda_n + \frac{1}{2!}\lambda_n^2 + \frac{1}{3!}\lambda_n^3 + \dots + \frac{1}{k!}\lambda_n^k \end{bmatrix} \\ &\rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} e^{\lambda_1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & e^{\lambda_2} & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & e^{\lambda_n} \end{bmatrix} \text{ as } k \rightarrow \infty. \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Therefore, } e^\Lambda = \begin{bmatrix} e^{\lambda_1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & e^{\lambda_2} & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & e^{\lambda_n} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution to Exercise 3.53. Denote the vector space of all sequences that are eventually 0, by c_{00} . (Check that c_{00} is indeed a vector space.) Define the norm of a sequence $(x^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \in c_{00}$ by $\|(x^{(n)})\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (x^{(n)})^2}$. This makes c_{00} a subspace of ℓ^2 (see Ex. 1.19) since this formula is the same as that for the norm of ℓ^2 . You can also independently, without using ℓ^2 , check that this really defines a norm. (The triangle inequality (N3), namely that $\|(x^{(n)} + y^{(n)})\|_2 \leq \|(x^{(n)})\|_2 + \|(y^{(n)})\|_2$, follows from the triangle inequality in \mathbb{R}^d , where d is chosen large enough such that $x^{(n)} = y^{(n)} = 0$ for all $n > d$.)

For each $k \in \mathbb{N}$, let $e_k = (e_k^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be the real sequence that is 1 in the k -th position and 0 everywhere else. That is, $e_k^{(n)} = 1$ if $n = k$ and $e_k^{(n)} = 0$ if $n \neq k$. (By the way, the set $\{e_1, e_2, e_3, \dots\}$ forms a basis of c_{00} ; see the MA103 Lecture Notes.) Consider the series $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2} e_k$ in c_{00} . Since $\|\frac{1}{k^2} e_k\|_2 = 1/k^2$ and $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2}$

is convergent, by definition $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2} e_k$ is absolutely convergent. We next give two proofs that $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2} e_k$ is not convergent in c_{00} .

Solution I. One way is to show that the limit is the sequence

$$L = (L^{(n)}) = (1, 1/2^2, 1/3^2, 1/4^2, 1/5^2, \dots) \in \ell^2 \setminus c_{00}.$$

Indeed, let s_k be the k -th partial sum of the series, that is,

$$s_k = \left(1, \frac{1}{2^2}, \frac{1}{3^2}, \dots, \frac{1}{k^2}, 0, 0, 0, \dots \right).$$

$$\|s_k - L\|_2 = \left\| \left(0, 0, \dots, 0, \frac{1}{(k+1)^2}, \frac{1}{(k+2)^2}, \dots \right) \right\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{n=k+1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2}}.$$

Note that since $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 1/n^2$ is convergent, meaning that the sequence of its partial sums $\sigma_k = \sum_{n=1}^k 1/n^2$ converges to $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 1/n^2$, it follows that

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \left(\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 1/n^2 - \sigma_k \right) = 0,$$

that is, $\sum_{n=k+1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} \rightarrow 0$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$. It follows that $\|s_k - L\|_2 \rightarrow 0$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$ and

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^2} e_k = L = (1, 1/2^2, 1/3^2, 1/4^2, 1/5^2, \dots) \in \ell^2.$$

Since limits are unique by Lemma 2.14, it follows that $(s^{(k)})_k$ cannot also have a limit in c_{00} .

Solution II. The following is another solution that directly shows by contradiction that there is no limit in c_{00} , without using ℓ^2 . Suppose that $(s_k)_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent in c_{00} and let the limit be $c = (c^{(n)}) \in c_{00}$. Then for some $d \in \mathbb{N}$, $c^{(n)} = 0$ for all $n > d$.

Use $\varepsilon = 1/(d+1)$ in the definition of convergence of $(s_k)_k$ to obtain that for some $N \in \mathbb{N}$, $\|s_k - c\|_2 < 1/(d+1)$ for all $k > N$.

Now consider the partial sum s_k where $k = \max\{N, d\} + 1$. This is a sequence with $(d+1)$ -th term $s_k^{(d+1)} = 1/(d+1)$. Also, $c^{(d+1)} = 0$. Thus, the $(d+1)$ -th term of the sequence $s_k - c = (s_k^{(n)} - c^{(n)})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ equals $s_k^{(d+1)} - c^{(d+1)} = 1/(d+1)$. In particular,

$$\|s_k - c\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (s_k^{(n)} - c^{(n)})^2} \geq \sqrt{(s_k^{(d+1)} - c^{(d+1)})^2} = |s_k^{(d+1)} - c^{(d+1)}| = 1/(d+1).$$

However, since $k > N$, we also have $\|s_k - c\|_2 < 1/(d+1)$, which is a contradiction.

(Note that a normed space with an absolutely convergent, non-convergent series cannot be complete, otherwise Theorem 3.49 will be contradicted. We can therefore conclude that c_{00} is not complete.)

Solution to Exercise 3.54. Let $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a Cauchy sequence. Let $n_1 \in \mathbb{N}$ be large enough so that for all $n, m \geq n_1$, $\|x_n - x_m\| < \frac{1}{2}$. Suppose that x_{n_1}, \dots, x_{n_k} have been constructed. Choose $n_{k+1} > n_k$ such that whenever $n, m \geq n_{k+1}$, $\|x_n - x_m\| < \frac{1}{2^{k+1}}$. Thus we get a sequence of indices $n_1 < n_2 < n_3 < \dots$ such that whenever $n, m \geq n_k$, $\|x_n - x_m\| < \frac{1}{2^k}$ for all k 's. In particular, $\|x_{n_{k+1}} - x_{n_k}\| < \frac{1}{2^k}$. Now we take $a_1 = x_{n_1}$, $a_2 = x_{n_2} - x_{n_1}$, $a_3 = x_{n_3} - x_{n_2}$, and so on. Then

$$\|a_k\| = \|x_{n_k} - x_{n_{k-1}}\| \leq \frac{1}{2^{k-1}} \quad (k \geq 2),$$

and so it follows from the Comparison Test that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \|a_k\| < +\infty.$$

By the hypothesis, $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k$ converges in X , that is, the sequence of partial sums

$$\left(\sum_{k=1}^K a_k \right)_{K \in \mathbb{N}} = (x_{n_1} + (x_{n_2} - x_{n_1}) + (x_{n_3} - x_{n_2}) + \cdots + (x_{n_K} - x_{n_{K-1}}))_{K \in \mathbb{N}} = (x_{n_K})_{K \in \mathbb{N}}$$

is convergent. So the Cauchy sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ possesses the convergent subsequence $(x_{n_k})_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$, and so it must be convergent. So X is complete.

Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 4

Solution to Exercise 4.3. That (1) implies (2') is immediate since (1) implies (2), and (2) implies (2').

Now suppose that (2') holds. Let $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence contained in I that converges to $c \in I$. Then the new sequence $x_1, c, x_2, c, x_3, c, \dots$ also converges to c . By the hypothesis (2'), it follows that the image of this sequence under f , namely the sequence $f(x_1), f(c), f(x_2), f(c), f(x_3), f(c), \dots$ must be convergent, say with limit L . But then each of its subsequences must also be convergent with the same limit L . By looking at the even indexed terms of this sequence, we obtain that the subsequence $f(c), f(c), f(c), \dots$ converges to L , and so $L = f(c)$. On the other hand, by looking at the odd indexed terms, we conclude that the sequence $f(x_1), f(x_2), f(x_3), \dots$ must be also convergent with limit $L (=f(c))$. Thus (2) holds. As (2) implies (1), it follows that (1) holds. Hence we have shown that (2') implies (1).

Solution to Exercise 4.6. Let $x \neq 0$. We consider two possible cases.

1° Let x be rational. Then we can find a sequence $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of irrational numbers that converges to x , by the result in Exercise 1.40. If f was continuous at x , then $(f(y_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (-y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ would have to be convergent with limit $f(x) = x$. But then we obtain $x = -x$ and so $x = 0$, a contradiction.

2° Let x be irrational. Then we can find a sequence $(r_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of rational numbers that converges to x , by the result in Exercise 1.39. If f was continuous at x , then $(f(r_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (r_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ would have to be convergent with limit $f(x) = -x$. But then we obtain $x = -x$ and so $x = 0$, a contradiction.

So f is not continuous at x whenever $x \neq 0$. We now show that f is continuous at 0. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Let $\delta := \epsilon > 0$. Since $f(x) = x$ if x is rational, and $-x$ if x is irrational, it follows that in either case, $|f(x)| = |x|$. Thus, whenever $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $|x - 0| = |x| < \delta = \epsilon$, we have

$$|f(x) - f(0)| = |f(x) - 0| = |f(x)| = |x| < \delta = \epsilon.$$

So f is continuous at 0.

Solution to Exercise 4.7. Let x be a rational number. Then $f(x) > 0$. We can find a sequence $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of irrational numbers that converges to x , by the result in Exercise 1.40. If f was continuous at x , then $(f(y_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (0)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ would have to be convergent with limit $f(x) > 0$, which is clearly not true. Thus f is not continuous at x .

Now suppose that x is irrational. Then $x \neq 0$, and so there exists an integer N such that $x \in (N, N+1)$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Suppose that r is a rational number in $(N, N+1)$ for which $f(r) \geq \epsilon$. Let $r = n/d$, where n, d are integers without any common divisors and $d > 0$. Then we have $f(r) = 1/d \geq \epsilon$ and so $d \leq 1/\epsilon$. So there are just finitely many possibilities for d . Moreover, since $N < n/d < N+1$, it follows that $Nd < n < (N+1)d$, and so there are only finitely many possibilities for d as well. So there are just finitely many rational numbers r in $(N, N+1)$ for which $f(r) \geq \epsilon$. Now among these finitely many rational numbers, let r_* be one which is the closest to x , and set $\delta := \min\{|x - r_*|/2, |x - N|, |x - (N+1)|\} > 0$. Then whenever $z \in \mathbb{R}$ and $|z - x| < \delta$, we are guaranteed that $z \in (N, N+1)$, and moreover if z is rational, then it can't be one of the rational r 's in $(N, N+1)$ for which $f(r) \geq \epsilon$, and so it must be the case that $f(z) < \epsilon$. If z is irrational, then $f(z) = 0$ by definition of f , and so then too we have $f(z) = 0 < \epsilon$. So we have that for all $z \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $|z - x| < \delta$, $|f(z) - f(x)| = |f(z) - 0| = |f(z)| = f(z) < \epsilon$. This completes the proof that f is continuous at every irrational number.

Solution to Exercise 4.8. Imagine a directed line ℓ such that the pancake lies entirely to one side of the line ℓ (say if we look along the direction of the line, the pancake appears to our right). Now translate the line to the right parallel to itself till the whole pancake appears to the left of the line. Suppose that the total distance by which the line is translated is d . At each intermediate distance $x \in [0, d]$, let $A(x)$ denote the area of the part of the pancake that lies to the right of our line. Thus if S is the total area of the pancake, then $A(0) = A$ and $A(d) = 0$. As the map $A : [0, d] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous and $f(0) = S \geq S/2 \geq 0 = f(d)$, it follows by the Intermediate Value Theorem, that there is an $y \in [0, d]$ such that $A(y) = S/2$, or in other words, at some position of our line, the pancake is divided into two parts with equal areas.

As the direction of the line in the above process was inconsequential, given any direction, we can choose a straight line cut having that direction which divides the pancake into two equal parts.

Solution to Exercise 4.10. For nonzero $x \in \mathbb{R}^2$, we have

$$\left| \frac{x_1 x_2}{\sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2}} \right| = \frac{|x_1| |x_2|}{\|x\|_2} \leq \frac{\|x\|_2 \|x\|_2}{\|x\|_2} = \|x\|_2.$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Set $\delta := \epsilon > 0$. Then if $0 \neq x \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and $\|x - 0\|_2 = \|x\|_2 < \delta = \epsilon$, we have

$$|f(x) - f(0)| = |f(x) - 0| = |f(x)| = \left| \frac{x_1 x_2}{\sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2}} \right| \leq \|x\|_2 < \delta = \epsilon.$$

On the other hand, if $x = 0$, then $|f(x) - f(0)| = 0 < \epsilon$, trivially.

Thus f is continuous at 0.

Solution to Exercise 4.11.

- (1) Suppose f is continuous at 0. The sequence $(1/n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit 0. Thus $(f(1/n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (1)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ must be convergent with limit $f(0) = 0$, which is clearly false. Hence f is not continuous at 0.
- (2) Let $\epsilon > 0$. Take $\delta = \frac{1}{2} > 0$. Then whenever $x \in \mathbb{R}$ with $d_X(x, 0) < \delta = 1/2$, we have $d_X(x, 0) = 0$ and $x = 0$, which gives $f(x) = f(0) = 0$. Thus whenever $x \in \mathbb{R}$ with $d_X(x, 0) < \delta = 1/2$, $|f(x) - f(0)| = |f(0) - f(0)| = 0 < \epsilon$. This shows that f is continuous at 0.

Solution to Exercise 4.12. If $x, y \in X$ we have by the triangle inequality that

$$d(x, p) \leq d(x, y) + d(y, p),$$

and so $d(x, p) - d(y, p) \leq d(x, y)$. Similarly,

$$d(y, p) \leq d(y, x) + d(x, p) = d(x, y) + d(x, p),$$

and so $d(y, p) - d(x, p) \leq d(x, y)$. Consequently, $|d(x, p) - d(y, p)| \leq d(x, y)$. Let $\epsilon > 0$, and set $\delta := \epsilon > 0$. Then whenever $y \in X$ and $d(x, y) < \delta = \epsilon$, we have

$$|d(x, p) - d(y, p)| \leq d(x, y) < \delta = \epsilon.$$

This shows that the map f is continuous at $x \in X$. As the choice of $x \in X$ was arbitrary, it follows that f is continuous on X .

Solution to Exercise 4.13. Let $(x_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. We have for all $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ that

$$\begin{aligned} |x + y - (x_0 + y_0)| &= |(x - x_0) + (y - y_0)| \leq |x - x_0| + |y - y_0| \\ &\leq \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 + \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 = 2\|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, given $\epsilon > 0$, we can set $\delta := \epsilon/2 > 0$, and then for all $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ satisfying the inequality $\|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 < \delta$, we have

$$|x + y - (x_0 + y_0)| \leq 2\|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 \leq 2\delta = \epsilon.$$

As the choice of $(x_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ was arbitrary, it follows that addition is continuous.

Let $(x_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. We have for all $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$

$$\begin{aligned} |xy - x_0 y_0| &= |xy - x_0 y + x_0 y - x_0 y_0| \leq |y| |x - x_0| + |x_0| |y - y_0| \\ &\leq |y| \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 + |x_0| \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 \\ &= (|y| + |x_0|) \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2. \end{aligned}$$

But if (x_0, y_0) is close to (x, y) , then $|y|$ is close to $|y_0|$. So the continuity will follow from the above inequality. We give the precise details below. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Set

$$\delta = \min \left\{ 1, \frac{\epsilon}{1 + |y_0| + |x_0|} \right\} > 0.$$

Then whenever $\|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 < \delta$, we have first of all that

$$|y| = |y_0 + (y - y_0)| \leq |y_0| + |y - y_0| \leq |y_0| + \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 < |y_0| + \delta \leq |y_0| + 1.$$

So if $\|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 < \delta$, then

$$|xy - x_0 y_0| \leq (|y| + |x_0|) \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 < (|y_0| + 1 + |x_0|) \delta \leq (|y_0| + 1 + |x_0|) \frac{\epsilon}{1 + |y_0| + |x_0|} = \epsilon.$$

As the choice of $(x_0, y_0) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ was arbitrary, it follows that multiplication is continuous.

Solution to Exercise 4.14. Let $f \in C[0, 1]$. If $g \in C[0, 1]$, then we have for $x \in [0, 1]$ that

$$\begin{aligned} |(Sg)(x) - (Sf)(x)| &= |(g(x))^2 - (f(x))^2| = |g(x) + f(x)||g(x) - f(x)| \\ &\leq (|g(x)| + |f(x)|)\|g - f\|_\infty \\ &\leq (\|g\|_\infty + \|f\|_\infty)\|g - f\|_\infty. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\|Sg - Sf\|_\infty \leq (\|g\|_\infty + \|f\|_\infty)\|g - f\|_\infty$. If $\|g - f\|_\infty < \delta$, then we have

$$\|g\|_\infty \leq \|g - f\|_\infty + \|f\|_\infty < \delta + \infty,$$

and so the above yields that $\|Sg - Sf\|_\infty < (\delta + 2\|f\|_\infty)\delta$. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Define

$$\delta = \min \left\{ \frac{\epsilon}{1 + 2\|f\|_\infty}, 1 \right\}.$$

Then whenever $g \in C[0, 1]$ and $\|g - f\|_\infty < \delta$, we have

$$\|Sg - Sf\|_\infty < (\delta + 2\|f\|_\infty)\delta \leq (1 + 2\|f\|_\infty)\delta \leq \epsilon.$$

Hence S is continuous at f . As the choice of $f \in C[0, 1]$ was arbitrary, it follows that S is continuous on $C[0, 1]$.

Solution to Exercise 4.16.

- (1) Let $x, y \in C$. Define $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow C$ by $\gamma(t) = (1 - t)x + ty$, $t \in [0, 1]$. Then γ is well-defined since $\gamma(0) = x \in C$, $\gamma(1) = y \in C$ and for all $t \in (0, 1)$, C being convex, we have $\gamma(t) = (1 - t)x + ty \in C$ as well.

Also, if $s, t \in [0, 1]$, we have $\gamma(t) = x + t(y - x)$ and $\gamma(s) = x + s(y - x)$, and so

$$\begin{aligned} \|\gamma(t) - \gamma(s)\|_2 &= \|x + t(y - x) - (x + s(y - x))\|_2 = \|(t - s)(y - x)\|_2 \\ &= |t - s|\|y - x\|_2. \end{aligned}$$

From here it follows that γ is continuous. Hence γ is the desired path joining x to y . Consequently, C is path connected.

- (2) We verify below that R is reflexive, symmetric and transitive.

(R1) (*Reflexivity*) Let $x \in S$. Define $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow S$ by $\gamma(t) = x$ ($t \in [0, 1]$). Clearly γ is continuous and $\gamma(0) = \gamma(1) = x$. So xRx .

(R2) (*Symmetry*) Let $x, y \in S$ and suppose that xRy . Then there exists a continuous path $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow S$ such that $\gamma(0) = x$ and $\gamma(1) = y$. Define the new map $\mu : [0, 1] \rightarrow S$ by $\mu(t) := \gamma(1 - t)$ ($t \in [0, 1]$). Then $\mu(0) = \gamma(1) = y$, $\mu(1) = \gamma(0) = x$, and since μ is the composition of two continuous maps, namely the continuous map γ with the continuous map $t \mapsto 1 - t : [0, 1] \rightarrow [0, 1]$, it follows that μ is continuous too. Hence yRx as well.

(R3) (*Transitivity*) Let $x, y, z \in S$ be such that xRy and yRz . We would like to show that xRz . As xRy and yRz , there exist continuous maps $\gamma_1, \gamma_2 : [0, 1] \rightarrow S$ such that $\gamma_1(0) = x$, $\gamma_1(1) = y$, $\gamma_2(0) = y$ and $\gamma_2(1) = z$. Define the map $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow S$ as follows:

$$\gamma(t) = \begin{cases} \gamma_1(2t) & \text{if } t \in [0, \frac{1}{2}), \\ \gamma_2(2t - 1) & \text{if } t \in [\frac{1}{2}, 1]. \end{cases}$$

Then $\gamma(0) = \gamma_1(0) = x$ and $\gamma(1) = \gamma_2(1) = z$. Also, it is not hard to check that γ is continuous. Hence xRz .

Thus R is an equivalence relation.

- (3) The circle $\mathbb{S}^1 := \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x^2 + y^2 = 1\}$ is path connected. Indeed, if $a, b \in \mathbb{S}^1$, then there are real numbers $\theta_a, \theta_b \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $a = (\cos \theta_a, \sin \theta_a)$ and $b = (\cos \theta_b, \sin \theta_b)$. Define the map $\theta : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $\theta(t) = (1 - t)\theta_a + t\theta_b$, $t \in [0, 1]$. Now define $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ by $\gamma(t) = (\cos(\theta(t)), \sin(\theta(t)))$ ($t \in [0, 1]$). Then γ is continuous, $\gamma(0) = a$ and $\gamma(1) = b$. Thus \mathbb{S}^1 is path connected. (Alternately, using the fact that R is an equivalence relation, it is easy to see that it is enough to check the path connectedness of the two arcs

$$\begin{aligned} A_+ &:= \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x^2 + y^2 = 1, y \geq 0\}, \\ A_- &:= \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x^2 + y^2 = 1, y \leq 0\} \end{aligned}$$

lying in the upper half-plane and lower half plane, respectively. If $a = (x_1, y_a)$ and $b = (x_b, y_b)$ belong to A_+ , then define $x : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $x(t) = (1 - t)x_a + tx_b$ ($t \in [0, 1]$). Define $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ as follows:

$$\gamma(t) = \left(x(t), \sqrt{1 - (x(t))^2} \right) \quad (t \in [0, 1]).$$

Then γ is continuous, $\gamma(0) = a$ and $\gamma(1) = b$. This shows that A_+ is path connected. For showing that A_- is path connected, we proceed similarly, except that we use

$$\gamma(t) = \left(x(t), -\sqrt{1 - (x(t))^2}\right) \quad (t \in [0, 1])$$

as our path.)

The set $\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : xy = 0\}$ is just the union of the two straight lines, namely the horizontal “ x -axis” and the vertical “ y -axis” when we identify \mathbb{R}^2 with the plane in the usual manner. It is now pictorially evident that this set is path connected. Indeed, if x, y belong to this set then we have three cases. If they both lie on the x -axis we just join them by the horizontal straight line segment which is contained entirely in the x -axis. If they both lie on the y -axis, we join them by the vertical line segment which is contained entirely in the y axis. Finally, if one lies on the x axis and the other on the y -axis, then we join the point on the x -axis to the origin by a horizontal straight line segment, and then join the origin to the point on the y -axis with a vertical line segment. Figure 12 illustrates this.

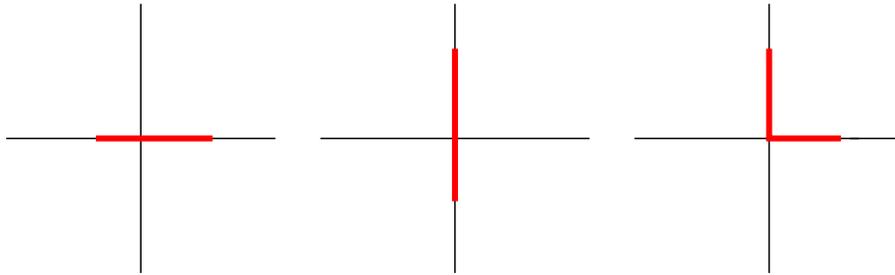


Figure 12. Paths in the set $\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : xy = 0\}$.

The set $H := \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : xy = 1\}$ is not path connected, and we prove this by contradiction. Clearly the points $(1, 1)$ and $(-1, -1)$ both belong to H . Suppose that there is a continuous path $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ such that $\gamma(0) = (-1, -1)$ and $\gamma(1) = (1, 1)$. Composing γ with the linear transformation which is projection onto the x -axis, namely the map

$$x(t) := \text{the first component of } \gamma(t) \quad (t \in [0, 1]),$$

we have that $x : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous and $x(0) = -1$ and $x(1) = 1$. As we have that $x(-1) = -1 < 0 < 1 = x(1)$, it follows from the Intermediate value Theorem that there is a $t_0 \in [0, 1]$ such that $x(t_0) = 0$. But this means that the first component of $x(t_0)$ is 0 and so the product of the two components of $\gamma(t_0)$ is 0. Thus $\gamma(t_0) \notin H$, a contradiction. Consequently, H is not path connected.

In fact, H has two path components, namely,

$$\begin{aligned} H_+ &:= \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : xy = 1 \text{ and } x > 0\}, \\ H_- &:= \{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : xy = 1 \text{ and } x < 0\}. \end{aligned}$$

It is easy to see that H_+ and H_- are path connected. We just show it for H_+ . Suppose that $a = (x_a, y_a)$ and $b = (x_b, y_b)$ are points in H_+ . Let the map $x : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by $x(t) = (1 - t)x_a + tx_b$ ($t \in [0, 1]$). Then $x(t) > 0$ for all $t \in [0, 1]$. Define $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ as follows:

$$\gamma(t) = \left(x(t), \frac{1}{x(t)}\right) \quad (t \in [0, 1]).$$

Then γ is continuous, $\gamma(0) = a$ and $\gamma(1) = b$.

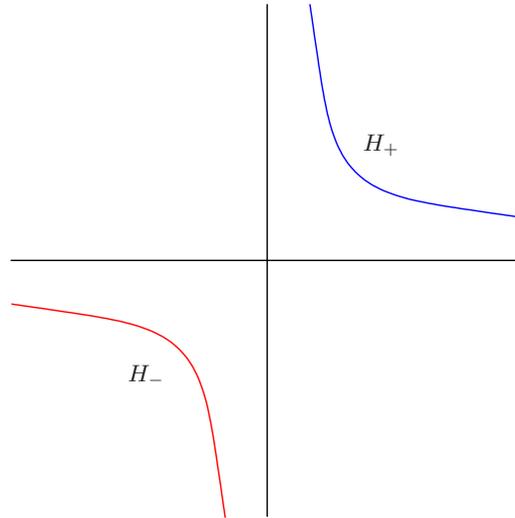


Figure 13. Path components of the set $\{(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : xy = 1\}$.

Solution to Exercise 4.17. We have

$$f^{-1}(\{-1, 1\}) = \{n\pi : n \in \mathbb{Z}\},$$

$$f^{-1}(\{1\}) = \{2n\pi : n \in \mathbb{Z}\},$$

$$f^{-1}([-1, 1]) = f^{-1}(\mathbb{R}) = \mathbb{R},$$

$$f^{-1}\left(\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)\right) = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \left((2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{\pi}{6}, (2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{6} \right) = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \left(n\pi + \frac{\pi}{3}, n\pi + \frac{2\pi}{3} \right).$$

Solution to Exercise 4.18. Since the cosine function \cos is periodic with period 2π (that is, there holds $f(x) = f(x + 2\pi)$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$), it follows that $f(\mathbb{R}) = f([0, 2\pi]) = f([\delta, \delta + 2\pi]) = [-1, 1]$.

Solution to Exercise 4.21. (“If” part) Suppose that for every closed F in Y , $f^{-1}(F)$ is closed in X . Now let V be open in Y . Then $Y \setminus V$ is closed in Y . Thus

$$f^{-1}(Y \setminus V) = f^{-1}(Y) \setminus f^{-1}(V) = X \setminus f^{-1}(V)$$

is closed in X . Hence $f^{-1}(V) = X \setminus (X \setminus f^{-1}(V))$ is open in X . So for every open V in Y , $f^{-1}(V)$ is open in X . Consequently, by Theorem 4.19, f is continuous on X .

(“Only if” part) Suppose that f is continuous. Let F be closed in Y . Then $Y \setminus F$ is open in Y . Hence $f^{-1}(Y \setminus F) = f^{-1}(Y) \setminus f^{-1}(F) = X \setminus f^{-1}(F)$ is open in X . Consequently, we have that $f^{-1}(F) = X \setminus f^{-1}(Y \setminus F)$ is closed in X . So for every closed F in Y , $f^{-1}(F)$ is closed in X .

Solution to Exercise 4.23. Let $x \in (f \circ g)^{-1}(W)$. Then $(f \circ g)(x) \in W$, that is, $f(g(x)) \in W$. So $g(x) \in f^{-1}(W)$. Hence $x \in g^{-1}(f^{-1}(W))$. So we have the inclusion $(f \circ g)^{-1}(W) \subseteq g^{-1}(f^{-1}(W))$.

Now let $x \in g^{-1}(f^{-1}(W))$. This means that $g(x) \in f^{-1}(W)$. Thus $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) \in W$. Hence $x \in (f \circ g)^{-1}(W)$. So we also have the inclusion $g^{-1}(f^{-1}(W)) \subseteq (f \circ g)^{-1}(W)$. Consequently, $(f \circ g)^{-1}(W) = g^{-1}(f^{-1}(W))$.

Solution to Exercise 4.24.

(1) True.

Since $(-\infty, 1)$ is open in \mathbb{R} and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous, it follows that

$$\{x \in X : f(x) < 1\} = f^{-1}(-\infty, 1)$$

is open in X by Theorem 4.19.

(2) True.

Since $(1, \infty)$ is open in \mathbb{R} and $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous, it follows that

$$\{x \in X : f(x) > 1\} = f^{-1}(1, \infty)$$

is open in X by Theorem 4.19.

(3) False.

Take for example $X = \mathbb{R}$ with the usual metric, and consider the continuous function $f(x) = x$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$). Then $\{x \in X : f(x) = 1\} = \{1\}$, which is not open in \mathbb{R} .

(4) True.

$(-\infty, 1]$ is closed in \mathbb{R} because its complement is $(1, \infty)$, which is open in \mathbb{R} . Since $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous, it follows that $\{x \in X : f(x) \leq 1\} = f^{-1}(-\infty, 1]$ is closed in X by Corollary 4.20.

(5) True.

Since $\{1\}$ is closed in \mathbb{R} and since $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuous, it follows that

$$\{x \in X : f(x) = 1\} = f^{-1}\{1\}$$

is closed in X by Corollary 4.20.

(6) True.

Each of the sets $f^{-1}\{1\}$ and $f^{-1}\{2\}$ are closed, and so their finite union, namely

$$\{x \in X : f(x) = 1 \text{ or } 2\}$$

is closed as well.

(7) False.

Take for example $X = \mathbb{R}$ with the usual metric, and consider the continuous function $f(x) = 1$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}$). Then $\{x \in X : f(x) = 1\} = \mathbb{R}$, which is not bounded, and hence can't be compact.

Solution to Exercise 4.26. We show by induction that $f(n) = nf(1)$ for all natural numbers n . For $n = 1$, we have $f(n) = f(1) = 1 \cdot f(1) = nf(1)$, and so the claim is true when $n = 1$. If for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there holds $f(n) = nf(1)$, then we have $f(n+1) = f(n) + f(1) = nf(1) + f(1) = (n+1)f(1)$. This completes the induction step, and so the result holds for all natural numbers.

Also $f(0) = f(0+0) = f(0) + f(0)$ shows that $f(0) = 0 = 0 \cdot f(1)$. So $f(n) = nf(1)$ for all nonnegative integers. Let m be a negative integer. Then

$$0 = f(0) = f(m + (-m)) = f(m) + f(-m) = f(m) + (-m)f(1),$$

and so $f(m) = -(-m)f(1) = mf(1)$. So we have that $f(n) = nf(1)$ for all integers n .

Now every rational number r can be expressed as $r = n/d$ for some integers n, d with $d > 0$. Then

$$nf(1) = f(n) = f(d \cdot (n/d)) = \underbrace{f(n/d) + \cdots + f(n/d)}_{d \text{ times}} = d \cdot f(n/d).$$

Consequently, $f(n/d) = (nf(1))/d$, that is, $f(r) = rf(1)$.

Let $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Then we can find a sequence $(r_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of rational numbers which converges to x . Using the continuity of f we obtain

$$f(x) = f\left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} r_n\right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(r_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} r_n f(1) = x f(1).$$

Consequently, $f(x) = x f(1)$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Solution to Exercise 4.27. First note that if we substitute $x = 0$ into the given identity, we obtain $f(0) + f(0) = 0$, hence $f(0) = 0$.

Clearly $f(2x) = -f(x)$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, and so

$$f(x) = -f(x/2) = +f(x/4) = -f(x/8) = +f(x/16) = \cdots = +f(x/4^n)$$

for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. That is, for any $x \in \mathbb{R}$ the sequence

$$f(x), f(x/4), f(x/16), \dots, f(x/4^n), \dots,$$

is a constant sequence with limit $f(x)$. Since the sequence $(x/4^n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0, and f is continuous at 0, we also obtain that the above sequence converges to $f(0) = 0$. Since limits are unique, we obtain that $f(x) = 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

So if f is continuous and it satisfies the given identity then it must be the constant function 0.

Conversely, note that the constant function 0 is indeed continuous and also satisfies the identity $f(2x) + f(x) = 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Solution to Exercise 4.28. Let $\left(\begin{bmatrix} a_n \\ b_n \end{bmatrix}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence in \mathbb{R}^2 that converges to $\begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$. Then we know that $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to a in \mathbb{R} , and $(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to b in \mathbb{R} . Hence $(a_n b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to ab . In other words, $\left(f\left(\begin{bmatrix} a_n \\ b_n \end{bmatrix}\right)\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (a_n b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $f\left(\begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}\right) = ab$. So by Theorem 4.25, it follows that f is continuous.

Solution to Exercise 4.29. Clearly the sequence given by $(1, (-1)^n/n)$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$, is convergent with limit $(1, 0)$. So if f^{-1} were continuous, then $(f^{-1}((1, (-1)^n/n)))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ should converge to $f^{-1}(1, 0) = 0$. However, if we look at the odd indexed terms of $(f^{-1}((1, (-1)^n/n)))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, then we obtain the subsequence $(f^{-1}((1, -1/n)))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, which clearly converges to $1 \neq 0 = f^{-1}(1, 0)$. Hence f^{-1} is not continuous at the point $(1, 0)$.

Solution to Exercise 4.30. See Figure 14. Look at a spherical cap O_x around the point x on the sphere. Imagine a light source at the center O of the (transparent) sphere, which casts a shadow U of the (coloured) spherical cap on the plane \mathbb{R}^2 (screen) perpendicular to the line Ox . It is clear then that the sets O_x and U are homeomorphic. This shows that \mathbb{S}^2 is a manifold of dimension 2.

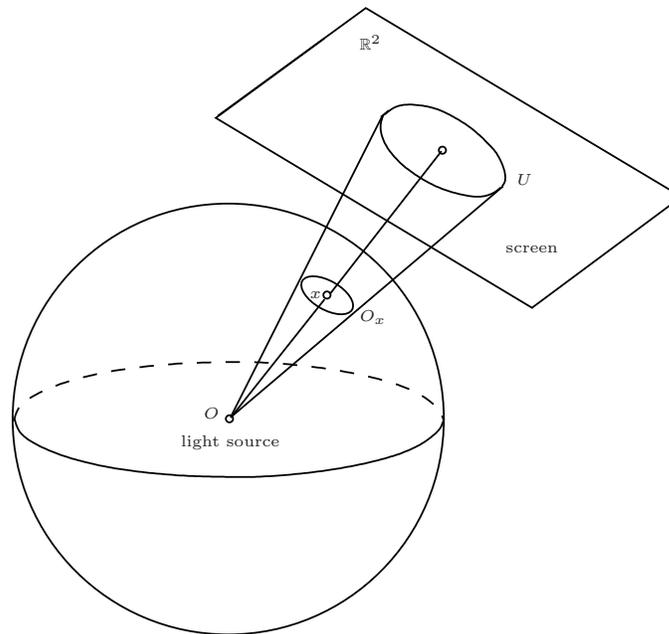


Figure 14. \mathbb{S}^2 is a 2-dimensional manifold.

Solution to Exercise 4.31. Consider the two sequences $(v_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(w_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ defined by

$$v_n := \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{n} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } w_n := \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{n} \end{bmatrix} \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}),$$

both of which are convergent to 0. But $(f(v_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (1)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, while $(f(w_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (-1)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, and clearly these cannot have the same limit $f(0) = c$, no matter what c is. Hence it follows from Theorem 4.25 that f is not continuous at 0.

Solution to Exercise 4.32. The determinant of M is given by the sum of expressions of the type

$$\pm m_{1p(1)} m_{2p(2)} m_{3p(3)} \cdots m_{np(n)},$$

where $p : \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$ is a permutation. Since each of the maps

$$M \mapsto m_{1p(1)} m_{2p(2)} m_{3p(3)} \cdots m_{np(n)}$$

is easily seen to be continuous using the characterization of continuous functions provided by Theorem 4.25, it follows that their linear combination is also continuous.

$\{0\}$ is closed in \mathbb{R} , and so its inverse image under the continuous map $\det : \mathbb{R}^{n \times n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is also closed. In other words, $\det^{-1}\{0\} = \{M \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n} : \det M = 0\}$ is closed. Thus its complement, namely the set $\{M \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n} : \det M \neq 0\}$ is open. But this is precisely the set of invertible matrices, since $M \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ is invertible if and only if $\det M \neq 0$.

Solution to Exercise 4.33. Let $X = (0, 1]$, $Y = \mathbb{R}$ with the usual Euclidean metrics. Define $f : (0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x} \quad (x \in (0, 1]).$$

Then f is continuous. Take $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ to be the Cauchy sequence $(\frac{1}{n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$. Then $f(x_n) = n$, and we have $|f(x_n) - f(x_m)| = |n - m| \geq 1$ for all $n \neq m$, showing that the sequence $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is not Cauchy.

Solution to Exercise 4.34. If U is open in $X = \mathbb{R}$ with the Euclidean metric, then $f(U) = U$ is also open in $Y = \mathbb{R}$ with the discrete metric d , since all subsets of (\mathbb{R}, d) are open. So the map f is open.

Let $x_0 \in \mathbb{R}$ and let $\epsilon = 1/2 > 0$. If f is continuous at x_0 , then there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $|x - x_0| < \delta$, we have $d(f(x), f(x_0)) < \epsilon = 1/2$. Now take $x = x_0 + \delta/2$. Then $|x - x_0| = \delta/2 < \delta$, but $f(x) = x = x_0 + \delta/2 \neq x_0 = f(x_0)$ and so $d(f(x), f(x_0)) = 1 \not< 1/2 = \epsilon$. Thus we arrive at a contradiction. Consequently, f is not continuous at x_0 .

Solution to Exercise 4.35.

- (1) Since $(x \pm y^2)^2 \geq 0$, we obtain by rearranging that $\pm \frac{xy^2}{x^2 + y^4} \leq \frac{1}{2}$ and so

$$|f(x, y)| = \left| \frac{xy^2}{x^2 + y^4} \right| \leq \frac{1}{2}$$

whenever $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$.

- (2) Consider the ball $B(0, r)$ with center $(0, 0)$ and radius $r > 0$. The idea is to take points (x_n, y_n) in $B(0, r)$ of the type

$$x_n := \frac{1}{n^m}, \quad y_n := \frac{1}{n^\ell}$$

with large enough natural numbers n and suitable exponents ℓ, m so that so that

$$g(x_n, y_n) = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{n^{m+2\ell}} + \frac{1}{n^{2m}}} = \frac{n^{m+4\ell}}{n^{6\ell} + n^{2m}}$$

grows unboundedly with increasing n . Clearly this can be arranged if $m + 4\ell > 6\ell$ and moreover $m + 4\ell > 2m$, that is if $4\ell > m > 2\ell$. One choice guaranteeing this is $\ell = 1$ and $m = 3$. Then

$$g(x_n, y_n) = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{n^5} + \frac{1}{n^6}} = \frac{n}{2}.$$

Clearly for all large enough n 's, $\|(x_n, y_n)\|_2 = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n^6} + \frac{1}{n^2}} < r$ since $\sqrt{\frac{1}{n^6} + \frac{1}{n^2}} \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0$. So the points (x_n, y_n) belong to $B(0, r)$ for all n 's large enough. But as $g(x_n, y_n) = \frac{n}{2}$, we see that g is not bounded on $B(0, r)$.

- (3) We have that the sequence $((a_n, b_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ given by $a_n = \frac{1}{n^2}$ and $b_n = \frac{1}{n}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), converges to $(0, 0)$. However,

$$f(a_n, b_n) = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{n^4} + \frac{1}{n^4}} = \frac{1}{2} \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}),$$

and so $(f(a_n, b_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (1/2)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ does not converge to $f(0, 0) = 0$. Consequently, f is not continuous at $(0, 0)$.

- (4) Suppose that g is continuous at $(0, 0)$. Then with $\epsilon := 1 > 0$, there exists a $r > 0$ such that whenever $(x, y) \in B(0, r)$, we have that

$$|g(x, y) - g(0, 0)| = |g(x, y) - 0| = |g(x, y)| < \epsilon = 1.$$

In particular, g is bounded on the ball $B(0, r)$. However, we have already seen in part (2) that this is false. Hence g is not continuous at $(0, 0)$.

- (5) $f(0, y) = 0$ for all $y \in \mathbb{R}$, and so the restriction of f to the line $x = 0$ is continuous. Similarly, since $f(x, 0) = 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, the restriction of f to the line $y = 0$ is continuous. For a point $p = (x, mx)$ on the line $y = mx$ with $m \neq 0$, and $x \neq 0$, we have that

$$f(p) = \frac{x(mx)^2}{x^2 + (mx)^4} = \frac{m^2x}{1 + m^4x^2}.$$

Now if $p_n = (x_n, mx_n)$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) is a sequence of points on the line $y = mx$ that converges to $p = (x, mx)$, then it is clear that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to x , and so

$$f(p_n) = \frac{m^2x_n}{1 + m^4x_n^2}$$

converges to

$$f(p) = \frac{m^2x}{1 + m^4x^2}$$

by the algebra of limits. (If $x = 0$, then x_n converges to $x = 0$, and so $f(p_n)$ clearly converges to $0 = f(0, 0) = f(p)$.) Thus the restriction of f to the line $y = mx$ is continuous.

$g(0, y) = 0$ for all $y \in \mathbb{R}$, and so the restriction of f to the line $x = 0$ is continuous. Similarly, since $g(x, 0) = 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, the restriction of f to the line $y = 0$ is continuous. For a point $p = (x, mx)$ on the line $y = mx$ with $m \neq 0$, and $x \neq 0$, we have that

$$g(p) = \frac{x(mx)^2}{x^2 + (mx)^6} = \frac{m^2x}{1 + m^6x^4}.$$

Now if $p_n = (x_n, mx_n)$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$) is a sequence of points on the line $y = mx$ that converges to $p = (x, mx)$, then it is clear that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to x , and so

$$g(p_n) = \frac{m^2x_n}{1 + m^6x_n^4}$$

converges to

$$g(p) = \frac{m^2x}{1 + m^6x^4}$$

by the algebra of limits. (If $x = 0$, then x_n converges to $x = 0$, and so $g(p_n)$ clearly converges to $0 = g(0, 0) = g(p)$.) Thus the restriction of g to the line $y = mx$ is continuous.

Solution to Exercise 4.40. We had seen in Exercise 1.37 that a singleton set in any metric space is closed. In particular, the set $\{0\}$ is closed in \mathbb{R}^n . As the linear transformation $T_A : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is continuous, it follows that its inverse image under f , namely the set

$$f^{-1}(0) = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^m : Ax = 0\} = \ker A$$

is closed in \mathbb{R}^m .

Solution to Exercise 4.41. Let V be a subspace of \mathbb{R}^n , and let $\{v_1, \dots, v_k\}$ be a basis for V . Extend this to a basis $\{v_1, \dots, v_k, v_{k+1}, \dots, v_n\}$ for \mathbb{R}^n . By using the Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization procedure, we can find an orthonormal set of vectors $\{u_1, \dots, u_n\}$ such that for each $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$, the span of the vectors v_1, \dots, v_i coincides with the span of u_1, \dots, u_i . Now define $A \in \mathbb{R}^{(n-k) \times n}$ as follows:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} u_{k+1}^\top \\ \vdots \\ u_n^\top \end{bmatrix}.$$

It is clear from the orthonormality of the u_i 's that $Au_1 = Au_2 = \dots = Au_k = 0$, and so it follows that also any linear combination of u_1, \dots, u_k lies in the kernel of A . In other words, $V \subseteq \ker A$.

On the other hand, if $x = \alpha_1 u_1 + \dots + \alpha_n u_n$, where $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$ are scalars and if $Ax = 0$, then it follows that

$$0 = Ax = \begin{bmatrix} u_{k+1}^\top(\alpha_1 u_1 + \dots + \alpha_n u_n) \\ \vdots \\ u_n^\top(\alpha_1 u_1 + \dots + \alpha_n u_n) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{k+1} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_n \end{bmatrix},$$

and so $\alpha_{k+1} = \dots = \alpha_n = 0$. Thus $x = \alpha_1 u_1 + \dots + \alpha_k u_k \in V$. Hence also $\ker A \subseteq V$. Consequently $V = \ker A$, and by the result of the previous exercise, it now follows that V is closed.

Solution to Exercise 4.52.

- (1) We have for
- $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$

$$\begin{aligned} N(x) &= N(x_1e_1 + \cdots + x_de_d) \\ &\leq N(x_1e_1) + \cdots + N(x_de_d) \quad (\text{triangle inequality}) \\ &= |x_1|N(e_1) + \cdots + |x_d|N(e_d) \\ &\leq M\|x\|_2 \quad (\text{Cauchy-Schwarz}) \end{aligned}$$

where $M := \sqrt{(N(e_1))^2 + \cdots + (N(e_d))^2} > 0$.

- (2) We have for
- $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^d$
- that
- $N(x) = N(y + x - y) \leq N(y) + N(x - y)$
- . Thus

$$N(x) - N(y) \leq N(x - y)$$

for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^d$. Interchanging x, y we also have

$$N(y) - N(x) \leq N(y - x) = |-1| \cdot N(x - y) = N(x - y).$$

Hence $-(N(x) - N(y)) \leq N(x - y)$ for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^d$. Consequently,

$$|N(x) - N(y)| \leq N(x - y)$$

for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^d$.

We have for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^d$ that $|N(x) - N(y)| \leq N(x - y) \leq M\|x - y\|_2$, and this shows the continuity of $N : (\mathbb{R}^d, \|\cdot\|_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

- (3)
- $K := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d : \|x\|_2 = 1\}$
- is a compact set in
- $(\mathbb{R}^d, \|\cdot\|_2)$
- , and
- $N : (\mathbb{R}^d, \|\cdot\|_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$
- is continuous. So by Weierstrass's theorem, there exists a point
- $c \in K$
- such that

$$N(x) \geq N(c) =: m$$

for all $x \in K$. As $c \neq 0$, $N(c) \neq 0$. Thus $m > 0$. We claim that in fact for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$, $m\|x\|_2 \leq N(x)$.

Suppose first that $x = 0$. Then clearly $m\|x\|_2 = m \cdot 0 = 0 = N(x)$. If on the other hand, $x \neq 0$, then we consider the vector

$$y = \frac{1}{\|x\|_2}x \in \mathbb{R}^d,$$

and note that

$$\|y\|_2 = \left\| \frac{1}{\|x\|_2}x \right\|_2 = \frac{1}{\|x\|_2}\|x\|_2 = 1,$$

and so $y \in K$. Consequently,

$$N(y) = N\left(\frac{1}{\|x\|_2}x\right) = \frac{1}{\|x\|_2}N(x) \geq N(c) = m,$$

and rearranging this gives $m\|x\|_2 \leq N(x)$. This completes the proof.

Solution to Exercise 4.53.

- (1) Let

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x & \text{if } x \in (0, \frac{1}{2}), \\ 2 - 2x & \text{if } x \in [\frac{1}{2}, 1]. \end{cases}$$

Then f is continuous on $(0, 1)$ and $f(0, 1) = (0, 1]$.

- (2) If there existed such a continuous f , then since $1/2, 3/2 \in T$ and since $f(S) = T$, there would exist $a, b \in S = (0, 1)$ such that $f(a) = 1/2$ and $f(b) = 3/2$. But then since we have that $f(a) = 1/2 < 1 < 3/2 = f(b)$, it follows by the Intermediate Value Theorem that there is a c between a and b such that $f(c) = 1$. Thus $1 \in f(S) = T$, a contradiction.
- (3) We have $0, 1 \in \mathbb{Q} = T = f(S)$, and so there exist $a, b \in S = \mathbb{R}$ such that $f(a) = 1$ and $f(b) = 2$. Since $f(a) = 1 < \sqrt{2} < 2 = f(b)$, it follows by the Intermediate Value Theorem that there is a c between a and b such that $f(c) = \sqrt{2}$. Thus $\sqrt{2} \in f(S) = T = \mathbb{Q}$, a contradiction.
- (4) Set

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \in [0, 1], \\ 1 & \text{if } x \in [2, 3]. \end{cases}$$

Then f is continuous on $[0, 1] \cup [2, 3]$. Indeed if $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a convergent sequence in S with limit L in S , then beyond a certain index N , the terms all lie in $[0, 1]$, or they all lie in $[2, 3]$. Thus

the terms of the sequence $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ beyond this index N are all 0, or they are all 1. In either case, the sequence $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent, and this shows that f is continuous. Also it is clear that $f(S) = T$.

- (5) S is closed and bounded and so it is compact. Thus $f(S) = T = \mathbb{R}^2$ must be compact too. But \mathbb{R}^2 is not bounded, and hence not compact. So we arrive at a contradiction.
- (6) S is closed and bounded and so it is compact. Thus $f(S) = T = (0, 1) \times (0, 1)$ must be compact too. But $(0, 1) \times (0, 1)$ is not compact (for example, the sequence $((1/n, 1/n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ has no convergent subsequence with limit in T). So we arrive at a contradiction.
- (7) Define $\varphi : (0, 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by

$$\varphi(x) = \frac{x - 1/2}{x(1 - x)} \text{ for } x \in (0, 1).$$

Then φ is continuous on $(0, 1)$ and $\varphi(0, 1) = \mathbb{R}$. Now set

$$f(x, y) = (\varphi(x), \varphi(y)) \text{ for } (x, y) \in (0, 1) \times (0, 1).$$

Then f is continuous and $f((0, 1) \times (0, 1)) = \mathbb{R}^2$. We prove these claims below.

If $((x_n, y_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a sequence in $(0, 1) \times (0, 1)$ that converges to (x, y) belonging to the set $(0, 1) \times (0, 1)$, then we have that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to x and $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to y . As φ is continuous, it follows that $(\varphi(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $\varphi(x)$ and $(\varphi(y_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $\varphi(y)$. Thus $(f(x_n, y_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = ((\varphi(x_n), \varphi(y_n)))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $(\varphi(x), \varphi(y)) = f(x, y)$. So f is continuous.

If $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$, then $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $y \in \mathbb{R}$. As $\varphi : (0, 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is onto, there exist $\xi, \eta \in (0, 1)$ such that $\varphi(\xi) = x$ and $\varphi(\eta) = y$. Thus $f(\xi, \eta) = (\varphi(\xi), \varphi(\eta)) = (x, y)$. Hence f is onto.

Solution to Exercise 4.54.

- (1) If there were two fixed points, say $c_1, c_2 \in X$, then $f(c_1) = c_1 \neq c_2 = f(c_2)$, and so from (4.1) we would have $d(c_1, c_2) = d(f(c_1), f(c_2)) < d(c_1, c_2)$, a contradiction.
- (2) We have $f(x) = x^2 < (\frac{1}{2})^2 = \frac{1}{4} < \frac{1}{2}$, and so we have that f maps $(0, \frac{1}{2})$ into $(0, \frac{1}{2})$. Also, we have for all $x \neq y$ that

$$\begin{aligned} |f(x) - f(y)| &= |x^2 - y^2| = |x + y||x - y| \\ &\leq (|x| + |y|)|x - y| < \left(\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\right)|x - y| = |x - y|. \end{aligned}$$

If f has a fixed point c , then $f(c) = c^2 = c$, and so $c = 0$ or $c = 1$, but neither of these belong to $X = (0, 1/2)$. Hence f has no fixed points.

- (3) It is easy to see that f is continuous: if $\epsilon > 0$, then setting $\delta = \epsilon > 0$, we have for all $x \in X$ satisfying $0 < d(x, x_0) < \delta$ that $d(f(x), f(x_0)) < d(x, x_0) < \delta = \epsilon$.

By the triangle inequality and using the condition in (4.1) we have for all $x \neq y$ that

$$d(x, f(x)) \leq d(x, y) + d(y, f(y)) + d(f(y), f(x)) < d(x, y) + d(y, f(y)) + d(x, y),$$

and so $d(x, f(x)) - d(y, f(y)) < 2d(x, y)$. Interchanging x, y , this yields

$$|g(x) - g(y)| = |d(x, f(x)) - d(y, f(y))| < 2d(x, y),$$

and this gives the desired continuity of g . (Alternately, we could use the result from Exercise 2.18. If $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a sequence in X convergent with a limit $L \in X$, then $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is also convergent with limit $f(L) \in X$. Thus by the result in Exercise 2.18, it follows that $(g(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} = (d(x_n, f(x_n)))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is convergent with limit $g(L) = d(L, f(L))$. So g is continuous.)

- (4) By Weierstrass's Theorem the continuous function g on the compact set X attains a minimum at some $c \in X$. We claim that $f(c) = c$. Suppose not. Then by (4.1), we obtain

$$g(f(c)) = d(f(c), f(f(c))) < d(c, f(c)) = g(c),$$

contradicting the fact that c is a minimizer of g on X . So $f(c) = c$, and hence a fixed point of f exists. It is also unique by the result in part (1).

Solution to Exercise 4.55. Since X is compact and since $f : X \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$ is continuous, it follows from Theorem 4.48 that $f(X)$ is a compact subset of \mathbb{Z} . Suppose that f is not finite-valued. Then one can find an infinite sequence of distinct integers $(n_k)_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $n_k \in f(X)$ for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$. But then this sequence in the set $f(X)$ cannot have a convergent subsequence since whenever $k \neq \ell$, $n_k \neq n_\ell$ and so $|n_k - n_\ell| \geq 1$. This contradicts the compactness of $f(X)$. Hence f can assume only finitely many values.

Solution to Exercise 4.56.

- (1) It suffices to construct a one-to-one correspondence between $[0, 1]$ and $(0, 1)$, because this map and its inverse will then be automatically continuous (since both spaces have the discrete metric). One way to construct the one-to-one correspondence $f : [0, 1] \rightarrow (0, 1)$ is to consider the enumeration of rationals in $(0, 1)$: r_1, r_2, r_3, \dots , and to define

$$f(0) = r_1, \quad f(1) = r_2, \quad f(r_1) = r_3, \quad f(r_2) = r_4, \dots, f(r_n) = f(r_{n+2}), \dots,$$

and $f(x) = x$ if $x \in [0, 1]$ is irrational. It is clear then that f is one-to-one and onto.

- (2) $[0, 1]$ is compact with the Euclidean metric, while $(0, 1)$ isn't compact with the Euclidean metric. (Indeed, if the sequence $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{4}, \dots$ in $(0, 1)$ had a convergent sequence with a limit $L \in (0, 1)$, then it would also converge in \mathbb{R} to L , which forces L to be 0, a contradiction.) If there were a continuous map $f : [0, 1] \rightarrow (0, 1)$, then $f([0, 1]) = (0, 1)$ would be compact, a contradiction.

Solution to Exercise 4.60. Suppose that f is uniformly continuous. Let $\epsilon = 1 > 0$, and let $\delta > 0$ be such that for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ satisfying $|x - y| < \delta$, there holds $|x^2 - y^2| < 1$. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, set $x_n = n$ and $y_n = n + \frac{1}{n}$. Then $|x_n - y_n| = \frac{1}{n} < \delta$ for all n 's large enough. However, $|x_n^2 - y_n^2| = |n^2 - (n + \frac{1}{n})^2| = 2 + \frac{1}{n^2} > 2 > 1 = \epsilon$, a contradiction. Thus f is not uniformly continuous.

Solution to Exercise 4.63. We have for $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ that $||x| - |y|| \leq |x - y|$. If $\epsilon > 0$, then with $\delta := \epsilon > 0$, we have for all $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ satisfying $|x - y| < \delta = \epsilon$ that $||x| - |y|| \leq |x - y| < \delta = \epsilon$. So the absolute value function is uniformly continuous.

Solution to Exercise 4.64. If $x, y \in X$, then by the triangle inequality we have

$$d(x, c) \leq d(x, y) + d(y, c),$$

and so $d(x, y) - d(y, c) \leq d(x, y)$. Interchanging x, y , we also have

$$d(y, c) \leq d(y, x) + d(x, c) = d(x, y) + d(x, c),$$

and so $-(d(x, c) - d(y, c)) \leq d(x, y)$. Consequently for all $x, y \in X$, we obtain

$$|d(x, c) - d(y, c)| \leq d(x, y).$$

So if $\epsilon > 0$ then with $\delta := \epsilon > 0$, we have for all $x, y \in X$ satisfying $d(x, y) < \delta = \epsilon$ that

$$|d(x, c) - d(y, c)| \leq d(x, y) < \delta = \epsilon.$$

So the distance function to a (fixed) point is uniformly continuous.

Solution to Exercise 4.65. Let $\epsilon > 0$. Set $\delta = \epsilon/L > 0$. Then whenever $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\|x - y\|_2 < \delta$, we have

$$\|f(x) - f(y)\|_2 \leq L\|x - y\|_2 < L\delta = \epsilon.$$

Thus f is uniformly continuous.

Solution to Exercise 4.66. Suppose that $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in X . We want to show that $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in Y . Let $\epsilon > 0$. Since f is uniformly continuous, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that whenever $d(x, y) < \delta$, we have $d(f(x), f(y)) < \epsilon$. As $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is Cauchy, there exists an index $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n, m > N$, $d(x_n, x_m) < \delta$. But then for all $n, m > N$, we have $d(f(x_n), f(x_m)) < \epsilon$. Hence $(f(x_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a Cauchy sequence in Y .

Solutions to the exercises from Chapter 5

Solution to Exercise 5.9. We have

$$\varphi(a) = \det \begin{bmatrix} f(a) & g(a) & 1 \\ f(a) & g(a) & 1 \\ f(b) & g(b) & 1 \end{bmatrix} = 0$$

since the first and second rows of the matrix are linearly dependent. Similarly,

$$\varphi(b) = \det \begin{bmatrix} f(b) & g(b) & 1 \\ f(a) & g(a) & 1 \\ f(b) & g(b) & 1 \end{bmatrix} = 0.$$

Also,

$$\varphi(x) = \det \begin{bmatrix} f(x) & g(x) & 1 \\ f(a) & g(a) & 1 \\ f(b) & g(b) & 1 \end{bmatrix} = f(x)(g(a) - g(b)) - g(x)(f(a) - f(b)) + f(a)g(b) - f(b)g(a) \quad (x \in [a, b]),$$

and so we see that φ is continuous on $[a, b]$, differentiable on (a, b) and

$$\varphi'(x) = f'(x)(g(a) - g(b)) - g'(x)(f(a) - f(b)) \quad (x \in (a, b)).$$

As $\varphi(a) = \varphi(b)$, it follows from Rolle's Theorem that there is a $c \in (a, b)$ for which $\varphi'(c) = 0$, that is,

$$f'(c)(g(a) - g(b)) - g'(c)(f(a) - f(b)) = 0.$$

Rearranging, we obtain the desired equality.

Solution to Exercise 5.13. We have $|f(x) - f(y)| \leq (x - y)^2 = |x - y|^2$, and so for $x \neq y$ we obtain

$$\left| \frac{f(x) - f(y)}{x - y} - 0 \right| \leq |x - y|.$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Then with $\delta := \epsilon > 0$, we have that whenever y satisfies $0 < |x - y| < \delta = \epsilon$, we have

$$\left| \frac{f(x) - f(y)}{x - y} - 0 \right| \leq |x - y| < \delta = \epsilon.$$

Thus $f'(x) = 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Now suppose that $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ and that $a < b$. Then by the Mean Value Theorem applied to f on the interval $[a, b]$, we obtain

$$\frac{f(a) - f(b)}{a - b} = f'(c)$$

for some $c \in (a, b)$. But $f'(c) = 0$, and so $f(a) = f(b)$. Thus f is constant.

Solution to Exercise 5.14. If $x, y \in (a, b)$ and $x < y$, then we have by the Mean Value Theorem applied to the interval $[x, y]$ that

$$\frac{f(x) - f(y)}{x - y} = f'(c)$$

for some $c \in (a, b)$. Since $|f'(c)| \leq M$, we obtain that

$$|f(x) - f(y)| \leq M|x - y|.$$

Clearly this is also true if $x = y$, and (by interchanging the roles of x and y) if $x > y$. Hence for all $x, y \in (a, b)$, there holds $|f(x) - f(y)| \leq M|x - y|$.

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Set $\delta = \epsilon/(M + 1)$ (the $M + 1$ is in case $M = 0$ and f is constant). Then if $x, y \in (a, b)$ and $|x - y| < \delta$, we have

$$|f(x) - f(y)| \leq M|x - y| \leq M\delta < (M + 1)\delta = \epsilon.$$

Hence f is uniformly continuous on (a, b) .

Solution to Exercise 5.15. Call the cubic function f . Suppose that a, b are two distinct zeros such that $a < b$. Then $f(a) = f(b) (= 0)$, and so by Rolle's Theorem, there must exist a $c \in (a, b)$ such that $f'(c) = 0$. But

$$f'(c) = 6c^2 + 6c + 6 = 6(c^2 + c + 1) = 6\left(c^2 + 2 \cdot c \cdot \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4}\right) = 6\left(\left(c + \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \frac{3}{4}\right) > 0.$$

Thus we see that f has *at most* one zero.

We now show that in fact there does exist a zero. Clearly $f(0) = 10 > 0$, while we have that $f(-2) = -16 + 12 - 12 + 10 = -6 < 0$. So by the Intermediate Value Theorem, there is a $z \in [-2, 0]$ such that $f(z) = 0$.

Solution to Exercise 5.16.

- (1) Suppose that there exist $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $a < b$ and $f(a) = a$, $f(b) = b$. Applying the Mean Value Theorem to f on $[a, b]$, we obtain

$$\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a} = \frac{b - a}{b - a} = 1 = f'(c)$$

for some $c \in (a, b) \subseteq (0, 1)$. But as $f'(c) \neq 1$, we have arrived at a contradiction. Hence if f has a fixed point, then it is unique.

- (2) Let $x_1 \in \mathbb{R}$, and set $x_{n+1} := f(x_n)$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}$. We claim that

$$|f(x_{n+1}) - f(x_n)| \leq M|x_{n+1} - x_n| \quad (n \in \mathbb{N}). \quad (6.4)$$

This is clearly true if $x_{n+1} = x_n$. If they are not equal, then we apply the Mean Value Theorem to the interval with endpoints x_{n+1} and x_n to obtain

$$\frac{f(x_{n+1}) - f(x_n)}{x_{n+1} - x_n} = f'(c),$$

for some c between x_{n+1} and x_n . As $|f'(c)| \leq M$, this yields the inequality (6.4).

Thus we have by a repeated application of (6.4) that

$$\begin{aligned} |x_{n+1} - x_n| &= |f(x_n) - f(x_{n-1})| \leq M|x_n - x_{n-1}| \\ &\leq M \cdot M|x_{n-1} - x_{n-2}| \\ &\vdots \\ &\leq M^{n-1}|x_2 - x_1|. \end{aligned}$$

Now consider the series

$$x_1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (x_{n+1} - x_n).$$

The estimate $|x_{n+1} - x_n| \leq M^{n-1}|x_2 - x_1|$, with $M < 1$, shows that this series converges absolutely, using the Comparison Test. As the partial sums of the above series telescope, that is,

$$x_1 + (x_2 - x_1) + (x_3 - x_2) + \cdots + (x_{n+1} - x_n) = x_{n+1},$$

it follows that

$$x_* := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n$$

exists. Since f is continuous, we also have that

$$f(x_*) = f\left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_n\right) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(x_n) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x_{n+1} = x_*.$$

So x_* is a fixed point.

- (3) See Figure 15.
 (4) We have

$$f'(x) = 1 - \frac{e^x}{(1 + e^x)^2} = \frac{1 + e^{2x} + e^x}{1 + e^{2x} + 2e^x},$$

and so $0 < f'(x) < 1$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

If f had a fixed point x_* , then $f(x_*) = x_*$ would imply that

$$f(x_*) = x_* + \frac{1}{1 + e^{x_*}} = x_*,$$

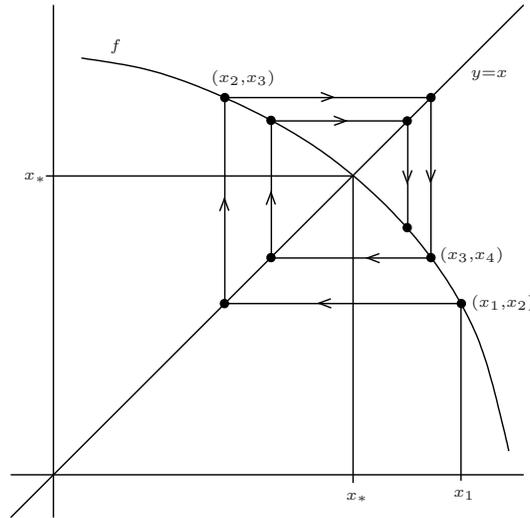


Figure 15. The zig-zag path $(x_1, x_2) \rightarrow (x_2, x_2) \rightarrow (x_2, x_3) \rightarrow \dots$

and so we would have

$$\frac{1}{1 + e^{x_*}} = 0,$$

which is clearly impossible, since $e^{x_*} > 0$.

We observe that although $|f'(x)| < 1$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, it is not uniformly bounded away from 1, that is, there does not exist an $M < 1$ such that for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $|f'(x)| < M$. Suppose, on the contrary, that such an M exists. Then we would have for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ that

$$1 - \frac{e^x}{(1 + e^x)^2} < M.$$

In particular, setting $x = -n$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$), we obtain for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ that

$$1 - \frac{e^{-n}}{(1 + e^{-n})^2} < M.$$

Passing the limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$ yields

$$1 - \frac{0}{(1 + 0)^2} = 1 \leq M,$$

a contradiction to the fact that $M < 1$. Thus there is no contradiction to the result from part (2).

Solution to Exercise 5.17. If $x \neq 0$, then f is differentiable at x and we have

$$f'(x) = 2x \sin \frac{1}{x} + x^2 \left(\cos \frac{1}{x} \right) \left(-\frac{1}{x^2} \right) = 2x \sin \frac{1}{x} - \cos \frac{1}{x}.$$

On the other hand, we have for $x \neq 0$ that

$$\frac{f(x) - f(0)}{x - 0} = x \sin \frac{1}{x},$$

and so, given $\epsilon > 0$, if we set $\delta = \epsilon > 0$, then we have for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ satisfying $0 < |x - 0| = |x| < \delta = \epsilon$ that

$$\left| \frac{f(x) - f(0)}{x - 0} - 0 \right| = \left| x \sin \frac{1}{x} \right| = |x| \cdot \left| \sin \frac{1}{x} \right| \leq |x| \cdot 1 < \delta = \epsilon.$$

Consequently, f is differentiable at 0, and its derivative is $f'(0) = 0$.

If f' were continuous, then since the sequence $(\frac{1}{2\pi n})_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to 0, it would follow that also $(f'(\frac{1}{2\pi n}))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ converges to $f'(0) = 0$. However, for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$f' \left(\frac{1}{2\pi n} \right) = \frac{2}{2\pi n} \sin(2\pi n) - \cos(2\pi n) = 0 - 1 = -1.$$

hence f' is not continuous. (So f is differentiable, but not “continuously differentiable”.)

Solution to Exercise 5.18. Since $x \mapsto f(x+n)$ is differentiable too, it follows that

$$x \mapsto \frac{f(x+n) - f(x)}{n} = f'(x)$$

is differentiable. Also, for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x+m) &= \frac{f(x+m+n) - f(x+m)}{n} = \frac{f(x+m+n) - f(x) + f(x) - f(x+m)}{n} \\ &= \frac{n+m}{n} \cdot \frac{f(x+m+n) - f(x)}{n+m} - \frac{m}{n} \frac{f(x+m) - f(x)}{m} \\ &= \frac{n+m}{n} f'(x) - \frac{m}{n} f'(x) = f'(x). \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$f''(x) = \frac{f'(x+n) - f'(x)}{n} = \frac{f'(x) - f'(x)}{n} = 0.$$

By the Mean Value Theorem applied to f' , this gives that f' is a constant, that is, there is a $c \in \mathbb{R}$ such that for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, $f'(x) = c$. Applying the Mean Value Theorem to f , we obtain for every nonzero real x that

$$\frac{f(x) - f(0)}{x - 0} = f'(z)$$

for some z between 0 and x . But since f' is constant, it follows that $f(x) = f(0) + cx$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Solution to Exercise 5.19. If $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ and $a < b$, then applying the Mean Value Theorem to the function $\cos \cdot$, we obtain

$$\frac{\cos a - \cos b}{a - b} = -\sin c$$

for some $c \in (a, b)$. But as $|\sin \theta| \leq 1$ for all real θ , it follows that

$$\left| \frac{\cos a - \cos b}{a - b} \right| \leq 1,$$

hence $|\cos a - \cos b| \leq |a - b|$.

The case $a > b$ is similar (note that the inequality does not change if a and b are interchanged).

The case $a = b$ is trivial (both sides of the inequality equal 0).

Solution to Exercise 5.20.

- (1) See Figure 16. The point $(1-t)x + ty$ is the point dividing the line segment joining x and y in the ratio $t : 1$. The convexity inequality says that the corresponding value of f , namely $f((1-t)x + ty)$ is at most $(1-t)f(x) + tf(y)$, and so the point $((1-t)x + ty, f((1-t)x + ty))$ lies below the point $((1-t)x + ty, (1-t)f(x) + tf(y))$ on the “chord” joining the points $(x, f(x))$ and $(y, f(y))$.

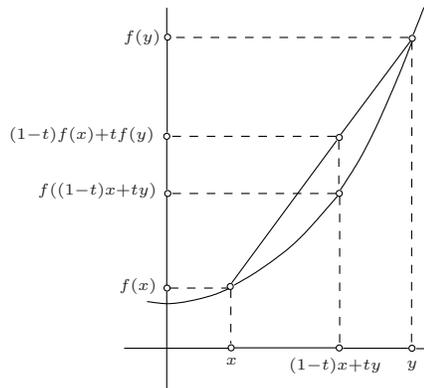


Figure 16. Geometric meaning of the convexity inequality.

- (2) (“If part”) Suppose that $f''(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Let $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ and (without loss of generality) let $x < y$. Suppose that $t \in (0, 1)$. Applying the Mean Value Theorem to f on the interval $[x, (1-t)x + ty]$ gives

$$\frac{f((1-t)x + ty) - f(x)}{t(y-x)} = f'(c_1)$$

for some c_1 such that $x < c_1 < (1-t)x + ty$. Also, by the Mean Value Theorem for f on the interval $[(1-t)x + ty, y]$ we obtain

$$\frac{f(y) - f((1-t)x + ty)}{(1-t)(y-x)} = f'(c_2)$$

for some c_2 such that $(1-t)x + ty < c_2 < y$. As $f''(\xi) \geq 0$ for all real ξ , and since $c_1 < c_2$, we can conclude that $f'(c_1) \leq f'(c_2)$ using Corollary 5.10. Hence we obtain

$$\frac{f((1-t)x + ty) - f(x)}{t(y-x)} = f'(c_1) \leq f'(c_2) = \frac{f(y) - f((1-t)x + ty)}{(1-t)(y-x)}.$$

Rearranging, we obtain $f((1-t)x + ty) \leq (1-t)f(x) + tf(y)$. So f is convex.

(“Only if part”) Now suppose that f is convex. Let $x < u < y$. If

$$t := \frac{u-x}{y-x},$$

then $t \in (0, 1)$, and $1-t = \frac{y-u}{y-x}$. From the convexity of f , we obtain

$$\frac{y-u}{y-x}f(x) + \frac{u-x}{y-x}f(y) \geq f\left(\frac{y-u}{y-x}x + \frac{u-x}{y-x}y\right) = f(u)$$

that is,

$$(y-x)f(u) \leq (u-x)f(y) + (y-u)f(x). \quad (6.5)$$

From (6.5), we obtain $(y-x)f(u) \leq (u-x)f(y) + (y-x+x-u)f(x)$, that is,

$$(y-x)f(u) - (y-x)f(x) \leq (u-x)f(y) - (u-x)f(x),$$

and so

$$\frac{f(u) - f(x)}{u-x} \leq \frac{f(y) - f(x)}{y-x}. \quad (6.6)$$

From (6.5), we also have $(y-x)f(u) \leq (u-y+y-x)f(y) + (y-u)f(x)$, that is,

$$(y-x)f(u) - (y-x)f(y) \leq (u-y)f(y) - (u-y)f(x),$$

and so

$$\frac{f(y) - f(x)}{y-x} \leq \frac{f(y) - f(u)}{y-u}. \quad (6.7)$$

Combining (6.6) and (6.7),

$$\frac{f(u) - f(x)}{u-x} \leq \frac{f(y) - f(x)}{y-x} \leq \frac{f(y) - f(u)}{y-u}.$$

Passing the limit as $u \searrow x$ and $u \nearrow y$, we obtain

$$f'(x) \leq \frac{f(y) - f(x)}{y-x} \leq f'(y),$$

and so f' is increasing.

Moreover, if f is twice differentiable, then $f''(x) = \lim_{\substack{y \rightarrow x \\ y > x}} \frac{f'(y) - f'(x)}{y-x} \geq 0$.

- (3) Suppose that $x_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ is such that $f(x_1) < f(x_0)$. We consider the two possible cases:
 \perp° $x_1 > x_0$. By the Mean Value Theorem applied to f on $[x_0, x_1]$, we obtain the existence of a c such that $x_0 < c < x_1$ and

$$f'(x_0) = 0 > \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{x_1 - x_0} = f'(c),$$

contradicting the convexity of f .

2° $x_1 < x_0$. By the Mean Value Theorem applied to f on $[x_1, x_0]$, we obtain the existence of a c such that $x_1 < c < x_0$ and

$$f'(x_0) = 0 < \frac{f(x_1) - f(x_0)}{x_1 - x_0} = f'(c),$$

again contradicting the convexity of f .

Thus $f(x) \geq f(x_0)$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Solution to Exercise 5.25. Let $|x| < 1$. Choose any $r \in (0, 1)$ such that $|x| < r < 1$. That the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} nr^{n-1}$$

converges can be seen using the Ratio Test:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(n+1)r^n}{nr^{n-1}} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right) r = r < 1.$$

Now consider the functions $f_n : (-r, r) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by $f_n(x) = x^n$ ($x \in (-r, r)$, $n \in \mathbb{N}$). Then the geometric series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_n(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} x^n$$

converges for each $x \in (-r, r)$.

Now we will show that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f'_n(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} nx^{n-1}$$

converges uniformly using the convergence of the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} nr^{n-1}.$$

By the Comparison Test, we have the pointwise convergence on $(-r, r)$ of the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} nx^{n-1}$$

since $|nx^{n-1}| \leq nr^{n-1}$ ($n \in \mathbb{N}$). Also,

$$\left| \sum_{n=1}^N nx^{n-1} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} nx^{n-1} \right| = \left| \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} nx^{n-1} \right| \leq \sum_{n=N+1}^{\infty} nr^{n-1}$$

shows the claimed uniform convergence. Thus we have by Corollary 5.23 that

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{1}{1-x} \right) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} nx^{n-1},$$

and so $1 + 2x + 3x^2 + \cdots = \frac{1}{(1-x)^2}$.

Solution to Exercise 5.29. (From the calculation done in the given hint, we guess that the derivative of g at c is the map $\mathbb{R}^n \ni h \mapsto 2f(c)f'(c)h$, and we prove our claim below.)

We have for $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ that

$$\begin{aligned} & (f(x))^2 - (f(c))^2 - 2f(c)f'(c)(x-c) \\ = & (f(x) + f(c))(f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x-c)) + (f(x) - f(c))f'(c)(x-c). \end{aligned}$$

From the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, we know that $|f'(c)(x-c)| \leq \|f'(c)\|_2 \|x-c\|_2$, and so

$$\begin{aligned} & |(f(x))^2 - (f(c))^2 - 2f(c)f'(c)(x-c)| \\ \leq & |f(x) + f(c)| |f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x-c)| + |f(x) - f(c)| \|f'(c)\|_2 \|x-c\|_2, \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have for $x \neq c$ that

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{|(f(x))^2 - (f(c))^2 - 2f(c)f'(c)(x-c)|}{\|x-c\|_2} \\ \leq & |f(x) + f(c)| \frac{|f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x-c)|}{\|x-c\|_2} + |f(x) - f(c)| \|f'(c)\|_2. \end{aligned}$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Since f is differentiable at c , it is also continuous at c . Hence there exists a $\delta_1 > 0$ such that whenever $\|x-c\|_2 < \delta_1$, we have that

$$|f(x) - f(c)| < \frac{\epsilon}{2(\|f'(c)\|_2 + 1)}.$$

We have $|f(x) + f(c)| \leq |f(x) - f(c) + 2f(c)| \leq |f(x) - f(c)| + 2|f(c)|$. Bearing this in mind, let $\delta_2 > 0$ be such that whenever $\|x-c\|_2 < \delta_2$, we have $|f(x) - f(c)| < 1$. Thus, for $\|x-c\|_2 < \delta_2$,

$$|f(x) + f(c)| \leq |f(x) - f(c)| + 2|f(c)| < 1 + 2|f(c)|.$$

As f is differentiable at c , there is a $\delta_3 > 0$ such that whenever $0 < \|x-c\|_2 < \delta_3$, we have

$$\frac{|f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x-c)|}{\|x-c\|_2} < \frac{\epsilon}{2(1 + 2|f(c)|)}.$$

Set $\delta = \min\{\delta_1, \delta_2, \delta_3\} > 0$. Then whenever $0 < \|x-c\|_2 < \delta$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{|(f(x))^2 - (f(c))^2 - 2f(c)f'(c)(x-c)|}{\|x-c\|_2} \\ \leq & |f(x) + f(c)| \frac{|f(x) - f(c) - f'(c)(x-c)|}{\|x-c\|_2} + |f(x) - f(c)| \|f'(c)\|_2 \\ < & (1 + 2|f(c)|) \frac{\epsilon}{2(1 + 2|f(c)|)} + \frac{\epsilon}{2(\|f'(c)\|_2 + 1)} \|f'(c)\|_2 < \epsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Thus g is differentiable at c and $g'(c) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is given by $g'(c)h = 2f(c)f'(c)h$ ($h \in \mathbb{R}^n$).

Solution to Exercise 5.30. We have

$$\begin{aligned} q(x) - q(c) - 2c^\top Q(x-c) &= x^\top Qx - c^\top Qc - 2c^\top Q(x-c) \\ &= x^\top Qx - c^\top Qc - 2c^\top Qx + 2c^\top Qc \\ &= x^\top Qx + c^\top Qc - 2c^\top Qx \\ &= x^\top Qx - c^\top Qx + c^\top Qc - c^\top Qx \\ &= (x-c)^\top Qx - c^\top Q(x-c). \end{aligned}$$

But $c^\top Q(x-c)$ is a scalar, and so it is its own transpose. So we obtain, using $Q = Q^\top$, that

$$c^\top Q(x-c) = (c^\top Q(x-c))^\top = (x-c)^\top Q^\top c = (x-c)^\top Qc.$$

Thus $q(x) - q(c) - 2c^\top Q(x - c) = (x - c)^\top Qx - (x - c)^\top Qc = (x - c)^\top Q(x - c)$. Now using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality we have the following estimate. For any vector $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|Qv\|_2^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n \left(\sum_{j=1}^n q_{ij} v_j \right)^2 \\ &\leq \sum_{i=1}^n \left(\sum_{j=1}^n q_{ij}^2 \right) \left(\sum_{j=1}^n v_j^2 \right) \\ &\leq \sum_{i=1}^n \left(\sum_{j=1}^n \|Q\|_\infty^2 \right) \|v\|_2^2 = n^2 \|Q\|_\infty^2 \|v\|_2^2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} |q(x) - q(c) - 2c^\top Q(x - c)| &\leq |(x - c)^\top Q(x - c)| \leq \|x - c\|_2 \|Q(x - c)\|_2 \\ &\leq \|x - c\|_2 \cdot n \cdot \|Q\|_\infty \|x - c\|_2 \\ &= n \cdot \|Q\|_\infty \cdot \|x - c\|_2^2. \end{aligned}$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Set $\delta = \frac{\epsilon}{n(\|Q\|_\infty + 1)}$. Then whenever $0 < \|x - c\|_2 < \delta$, we have

$$\frac{|q(x) - q(c) - 2c^\top Q(x - c)|}{\|x - c\|_2} \leq \sqrt{n} \|Q\|_\infty \|x - c\|_2 < n \|Q\|_\infty \delta = n \|Q\|_\infty \frac{\epsilon}{n(\|Q\|_\infty + 1)} < \epsilon.$$

Hence q is differentiable at c and $q'(c) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is given by $q'(c)v = 2c^\top Qv$ ($v \in \mathbb{R}^n$).

Solution to Exercise 5.31. We have that $f(x) = \|x\|_2^4 = (\|x\|_2^2)^2 = (x^\top x)^2 = (x^\top Ix)^2$. By the result of Exercise 5.30, we know that the map q given by $q(x) = x^\top Ix$ has derivative the map $v \mapsto 2c^\top Iv = 2c^\top v$ ($v \in \mathbb{R}^n$). Using the result in Exercise 5.29 it now follows that $f'(c)$ is the linear transformation given by $v \mapsto 2q(c)q'(c)v = 2(c^\top I c)2c^\top v = 4\|c\|_2^2 c^\top v$ ($v \in \mathbb{R}^n$).

Solution to Exercise 5.36. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(x, t) &= \tau e^{\tau t + \xi x}, \\ \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, t) &= \xi e^{\tau t + \xi x}, \text{ and} \\ \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}(x, t) &= \xi \frac{\partial}{\partial x} e^{\tau t + \xi x} = \xi \cdot \xi e^{\tau t + \xi x} = \xi^2 e^{\tau t + \xi x}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(x, t) - \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}(x, t) = \tau e^{\tau t + \xi x} - \xi^2 e^{\tau t + \xi x} = (\tau - \xi^2)e^{\tau t + \xi x} = 0 \cdot e^{\tau t + \xi x} = 0$.

Solution to Exercise 5.37. With $F : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$F(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = (P - a\alpha - b\beta)\beta \quad ((\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \in \mathbb{R}^3),$$

we have that

$$f(x) = \int_0^T (P - ax(t) - bx'(t))x'(t)dt = \int_0^T F(x(t), x'(t), t)dt$$

for $x : [0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ satisfying $x(0) = 0$ and $x(T) = Q$. We calculate

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial F}{\partial \alpha}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) &= -a\beta, \\ \frac{\partial F}{\partial \beta}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) &= P - a\alpha - 2b\beta. \end{aligned}$$

Let x_* denote the optimal mining operation. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial F}{\partial \alpha}(x_*(t), x'_*(t), t) &= -ax'_*(t), \\ \frac{\partial F}{\partial \beta}(x_*(t), x'_*(t), t) &= P - ax_*(t) - 2bx'_*(t). \end{aligned}$$

So the Euler-Lagrange equation for this problem is:

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial \alpha}(x_*(t), x'_*(t), t) - \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial \beta}(x_*(t), x'_*(t), t) \right) = -ax'_*(t) - \frac{d}{dt}(P - ax_*(t) - 2bx'_*(t)) = 0$$

for all $t \in [0, T]$. Thus $-ax_*(t) - (0 - ax'_*(t) - 2bx''(t)) = 0$ and so $x''(t) = 0$ ($t \in [0, T]$). Hence $x'_*(t) = A$ ($t \in [0, T]$) for some constant A , and so $x_*(t) = At + B$ for some constant $B \in [0, T]$. But we must also have $x_*(0) = 0$ and $x_*(T) = Q$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} A \cdot 0 + B &= 0, \\ A \cdot T + B &= Q, \end{aligned}$$

which gives us $x_*(t) = Q \frac{t}{T}$ ($t \in [0, T]$).

Solution to Exercise 5.38. We first calculate candidates for local minimizers. We have

$$f'(x_1, x_2)v = [4x_1^3 - 12x_2 \quad -12x_1 + 4x_2^3]v \quad (v \in \mathbb{R}^2).$$

So $f'(x_1, x_2) = 0$ if and only if $4x_1^3 = 12x_2$ and $4x_2^3 = 12x_1$, that is, if and only if $x_1^3 = 3x_2$ and $x_1 = x_2^3/3$. But if this latter condition holds, then $x_2^9/3^3 = 3x_2$, that is, $x_2(x_2^8 - 3^4) = 0$, and so $x_2 = 0$ or $x_2^8 = 3$, that is, $x_2 \in \{0, \sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3}\}$. If $x_2 = 0$, then $x_1 = 0$; if $x_2 = \sqrt[8]{3}$, then $x_1 = \sqrt[8]{3}$; and if $x_2 = -\sqrt[8]{3}$, then $x_1 = -\sqrt[8]{3}$. So if $x_1^3 = 3x_2$ and $x_1 = x_2^3/3$, then we have that $(x_1, x_2) \in \{(0, 0), (\sqrt[8]{3}, \sqrt[8]{3}), (-\sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3})\}$.

Conversely, if $(x_1, x_2) \in \{(0, 0), (\sqrt[8]{3}, \sqrt[8]{3}), (-\sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3})\}$, then $x_1^3 = 3x_2$ and $x_1 = x_2^3/3$.

So we have that $f'(x_1, x_2) = 0$ if and only if $(x_1, x_2) \in \{(0, 0), (\sqrt[8]{3}, \sqrt[8]{3}), (-\sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3})\}$.

We calculate that $f(0, 0) = 0$, while $f(\sqrt[8]{3}, \sqrt[8]{3}) = f(-\sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3}) = -18$. Since we are interested in global minimizers, we discard $(0, 0)$.

Also,

$$f(x_1, x_2) = x_1^4 + x_2^4 - 12x_1x_2 \geq \frac{(x_1^2 + x_2^2)^2}{2} - 12 \left(\frac{x_1^2 + x_2^2}{2} \right) = \frac{\|x\|_2^4}{2} - 6\|x\|_2^2.$$

It follows that there exists a $R > 0$ such that for all $\|x\|_2 \geq R$,

$$f(x_1, x_2) > -18 = f(\sqrt[8]{3}, \sqrt[8]{3}) = f(-\sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3}). \quad (6.8)$$

In the closed and bounded, and hence compact, set $K := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 : \|x\|_2 \leq R\}$, the continuous function $f|_K$ has a global minimizer. The global minimizer(s) can't lie on the boundary where $\|x\|_2 = R$ since there we have that (6.8) holds. So the global minimizer(s) has to be inside the open ball $B(0, R)$. These global minimizers are also local minimizers of $g|_{B(0, R)}$. So these have to be the points $(\sqrt[8]{3}, \sqrt[8]{3}), (-\sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3})$. But now they serve as global minimizers for f in \mathbb{R}^2 because we have $f(\sqrt[8]{3}, \sqrt[8]{3}) = f(-\sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3}) \leq g(x)$ for $x \in K$ as well as $f(\sqrt[8]{3}, \sqrt[8]{3}) = f(-\sqrt[8]{3}, -\sqrt[8]{3}) = -18 \leq f(x)$ for $x \notin K$.

Solution to Exercise 5.39. When f is given by $f(x, y) = 3x^3 + 9y^2 - 9x^3y$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) &= 9x^2 - 27x^2y, \\ \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) &= 18y - 9x^3. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(x, y) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(9x^2 - 27x^2y) = 0 - 27x^2, \\ \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(x, y) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(18y - 9x^3) = 0 - 27x^2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(x, y) = -27x^2 = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(x, y).$$

Now suppose that f is given by

$$f(x, y) = \begin{cases} xy \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2} & \text{if } (x, y) \neq (0, 0), \\ 0 & \text{if } (x, y) = (0, 0) \end{cases}$$

Then if $(x, y) \neq 0$, we have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x, y) = \frac{y(x^4 + 4x^2y^2 - y^4)}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}.$$

Also,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(0,0) = \lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} \frac{xy \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2} - 0}{x} = \lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} y \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2} = 0.$$

From the above two computations, we see that in particular, for all y we do have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(0, y) = -y.$$

Therefore for all y , $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(0, y) = -1$ and hence $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(0, 0) = -1$ too.

The computation of $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(0, 0)$ is similar. Thus,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x, y) = \frac{x(x^4 - 4x^2y^2 - y^4)}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}.$$

if $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$. Also,

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(0,0) = \lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} \frac{xy \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2} - 0}{y} = \lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} x \frac{x^2 - y^2}{x^2 + y^2} = 0.$$

From the above two computations, we see that in particular, for all x we do have

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(0, y) = x.$$

Therefore for all x , $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(0, y) = 1$ and hence $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(0, 0) = 1$ too. So we have

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}(0, 0) = -1 \neq 1 = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y}(0, 0).$$

Solution to Exercise 5.40. Let us call the map f . Thus $f(x, y) = xy$ for $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. Clearly

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0) = y_0 \text{ and } \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0) = x_0,$$

and so we guess that $f'(x_0, y_0)$ must be the linear transformation L that sends $(h, k) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ to

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(x_0, y_0) \cdot h + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}(x_0, y_0)k = y_0h + x_0k.$$

We will now prove this claim. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(x, y) - f(x_0, y_0) - L((x, y) - (x_0, y_0)) &= xy - x_0y_0 - y_0(x - x_0) - x_0(y - y_0) \\ &= xy - \cancel{x_0y_0} - y_0x + \cancel{y_0x_0} - x_0y + x_0y_0 \\ &= x(y - y_0) - x_0(y - y_0) = (x - x_0)(y - y_0), \end{aligned}$$

hence

$$\begin{aligned} |f(x, y) - f(x_0, y_0) - L((x, y) - (x_0, y_0))| &= |x - x_0| \cdot |y - y_0| \\ &\leq \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\| \cdot \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\| = \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2^2. \end{aligned}$$

Let $\epsilon > 0$. Set $\delta = \epsilon > 0$. Then whenever $0 < \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 < \delta$, we have

$$\frac{|f(x, y) - f(x_0, y_0) - L((x, y) - (x_0, y_0))|}{\|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2} \leq \|(x, y) - (x_0, y_0)\|_2 < \delta = \epsilon.$$

This completes the proof.

Solution to Exercise 6.3.

(1) Let $P = \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ where $a = x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_n = b$ and $P' = \{x'_0, x'_1, \dots, x'_m\}$ where $a = x'_0 < x'_1 < \dots < x'_m = b$. We have to show that $U(f, P) \geq L(f, P')$ where $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a bounded function.

We now define a partition P'' that is finer than both P and P' . Let $P'' = P \cup P' = \{x''_0, x''_1, \dots, x''_s\}$, where the elements have been relabeled so that $a = x''_0 < x''_1 < \dots < x''_s = b$.

The new partition P'' subdivides each interval $[x_k, x_{k+1}]$ ($0 \leq k \leq n-1$) into $n(k) \geq 1$ subintervals $[x_{k,0}, x_{k,1}], [x_{k,1}, x_{k,2}] \dots, [x_{k,n(k)-1}, x_{k,n(k)}]$, say, where $x_k = x_{k,0} < x_{k,1} < \dots < x_{k,n(k)-1} < x_{k,n(k)} = x_{k+1}$.

Similarly, P'' subdivides each interval $[x'_k, x'_{k+1}]$ ($0 \leq k \leq m-1$) into $m(k) \geq 1$ subintervals $[x'_{k,0}, x'_{k,1}], [x'_{k,1}, x'_{k,2}] \dots, [x'_{k,m(k)-1}, x'_{k,m(k)}]$, say, where $x'_k = x'_{k,0} < x'_{k,1} < \dots < x'_{k,m(k)-1} < x'_{k,m(k)} = x'_{k+1}$.

We can now calculate as follows, where the three inequalities below follow from the fact that if $[c, d] \subseteq [c', d']$, then

$$\inf_{x \in [c', d']} f(x) \leq \inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) \leq \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) \leq \sup_{x \in [c', d']} f(x).$$

$$\begin{aligned} U(f, P) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \cdot (x_{k+1} - x_k) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \sum_{\ell=0}^{n(k)-1} (x_{k,\ell+1} - x_{k,\ell}) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \sum_{\ell=0}^{n(k)-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_k, x_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) (x_{k,\ell+1} - x_{k,\ell}) \\ &\geq \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \sum_{\ell=0}^{n(k)-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x_{k,\ell}, x_{k,\ell+1}]} f(x) \right) (x_{k,\ell+1} - x_{k,\ell}) \quad (\text{note that } [x_{k,\ell}, x_{k,\ell+1}] \subseteq [x_k, x_{k+1}]) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{s-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x''_k, x''_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \cdot (x''_{k+1} - x''_k) \\ &= U(f, P'') \geq L(f, P'') = \sum_{k=0}^{s-1} \left(\inf_{x \in [x''_k, x''_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \cdot (x''_{k+1} - x''_k) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \sum_{\ell=0}^{m(k)-1} \left(\inf_{x \in [x'_{k,\ell}, x'_{k,\ell+1}]} f(x) \right) (x'_{k,\ell+1} - x'_{k,\ell}) \\ &\geq \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \sum_{\ell=0}^{m(k)-1} \left(\inf_{x \in [x'_k, x'_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) (x'_{k,\ell+1} - x'_{k,\ell}) \quad (\text{again note that } [x'_{k,\ell}, x'_{k,\ell+1}] \subseteq [x'_k, x'_{k+1}]) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \left(\inf_{x \in [x'_k, x'_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \sum_{\ell=0}^{m(k)-1} (x'_{k,\ell+1} - x'_{k,\ell}) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} \left(\sup_{x \in [x'_k, x'_{k+1}]} f(x) \right) \cdot (x'_{k+1} - x'_k) \\ &= L(f, P'). \end{aligned}$$

(2) We have already shown that $U(f, P) \geq L(f, P')$ for any $P, P' \in \mathcal{P}$. It follows that for any $P' \in \mathcal{P}$, $L(f, P')$ is a lower bound of the set $S = \{U(f, P) \mid P \in \mathcal{P}\}$. Therefore,

$$L(f, P') \leq \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P),$$

since a lower bound of S is \leq the greatest lower bound of S . It follows that $\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P)$ is an upper bound of the set $T = \{L(f, P') \mid P' \in \mathcal{P}\}$. Therefore,

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) \geq \sup_{P' \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P'),$$

since an upper bound of T is \geq the least upper bound of T .

Solution to Exercise 6.8.

(1) We have to show that $f + g$ is also bounded on $[a, b]$ and

$$\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f + g, P) = \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f + g, P) = \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx.$$

To show that $f + g$ is bounded, let $M_1, M_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ be such that $|f(x)| \leq M_1$ and $|g(x)| \leq M_2$ for all $x \in [a, b]$. Then $|f(x) + g(x)| \leq |f(x)| + |g(x)| \leq M_1 + M_2$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, which shows that $f + g$ is bounded.

Since we already know that $\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f + g, P) \leq \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f + g, P)$ (by Exercise 6.3), it remains to show the following two inequalities:

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f + g, P) \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx \leq \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f + g, P).$$

To show the first inequality, let $\varepsilon > 0$. Since $\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) = \int_a^b f(x) dx$, there exists $P \in \mathcal{P}$ such that

$$U(f, P) < \int_a^b f(x) dx + \frac{\varepsilon}{2}. \quad (6.9)$$

Similarly, since $\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(g, P) = \int_a^b g(x) dx$, there exists $P' \in \mathcal{P}$ such that

$$U(g, P') < \int_a^b g(x) dx + \frac{\varepsilon}{2}. \quad (6.10)$$

Let P'' be the union of P and P' (as in Exercise 6.3). Then

$$U(f, P'') \leq U(f, P) \quad \text{and} \quad U(g, P'') \leq U(g, P'). \quad (6.11)$$

Note that for any subinterval $[c, d]$ of $[a, b]$, and any $x \in [c, d]$,

$$f(x) + g(x) \leq \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) + \sup_{x \in [c, d]} g(x).$$

Therefore,

$$\sup_{x \in [c, d]} (f(x) + g(x)) \leq \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) + \sup_{x \in [c, d]} g(x).$$

It follows that

$$U(f + g, P'') \leq U(f, P'') + U(g, P''). \quad (6.12)$$

Putting together (6.9), (6.10), (6.11), (6.12), we obtain

$$U(f + g, P'') \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx + \varepsilon.$$

Since $\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f + g, P) \leq U(f + g, P'')$, we obtain

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f + g, P) \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx + \varepsilon.$$

Since this is true for all $\varepsilon > 0$, we obtain

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f + g, P) \leq \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx.$$

In a similar way we obtain the second inequality

$$\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f + g, P) \geq \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx.$$

It follows that

$$\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f + g, P) = \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f + g, P) = \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx,$$

which implies that $f + g$ is Riemann integrable on $[a, b]$ and that $\int_a^b f(x) + g(x) dx = \int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_a^b g(x) dx$.

(2) If $|f(x)| \leq M$ then $|\alpha f(x)| \leq |\alpha|M$ for all $x \in [a, b]$. It follows that αf is also bounded on $[a, b]$. To show that αf is Riemann integrable and that $\int_a^b \alpha f(x) dx = \alpha \int_a^b f(x) dx$, we first consider the case where $\alpha > 0$. Then using the fact that for any subinterval $[c, d]$ of $[a, b]$,

$$\sup_{x \in [c, d]} \alpha f(x) = \alpha \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x)$$

and

$$\inf_{x \in [c, d]} \alpha f(x) = \alpha \inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x),$$

it follows that $U(\alpha f, P) = \alpha U(f, P)$ and $L(\alpha f, P) = \alpha L(f, P)$ (check this by writing out the summations!), and consequently,

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(\alpha f, P) = \alpha \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) = \alpha \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

and

$$\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(\alpha f, P) = \alpha \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) = \alpha \int_a^b f(x) dx,$$

which implies that αf is Riemann integrable on $[a, b]$ and $\int_a^b \alpha f(x) dx = \alpha \int_a^b f(x) dx$.

Next consider the case where $\alpha = -1$. Now using the fact that for any subinterval $[c, d]$ of $[a, b]$,

$$\sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) = - \inf_{x \in [c, d]} -f(x)$$

and

$$\inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) = - \sup_{x \in [c, d]} -f(x),$$

it follows that $U(-f, P) = -L(f, P)$ and $L(-f, P) = -U(f, P)$ (again, write out the summations to verify this), and consequently,

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(-f, P) = - \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) = - \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

and

$$\sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(-f, P) = - \inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(f, P) = - \int_a^b f(x) dx,$$

which implies that $-f$ is Riemann integrable on $[a, b]$ and $\int_a^b -f(x) dx = - \int_a^b f(x) dx$.

Next consider the remaining case $\alpha < 0$. Then, since f is Riemann integrable, from what we have already shown, $|\alpha|f$ is Riemann integrable, hence $\alpha f = -|\alpha|f$ is Riemann integrable, and

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b \alpha f(x) dx &= \int_a^b -|\alpha|f(x) dx \\ &= -\int_a^b |\alpha|f(x) dx \\ &= -|\alpha| \int_a^b f(x) dx \\ &= \alpha \int_a^b f(x) dx.\end{aligned}$$

(3) Since $f(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, it follows that for any $[c, d] \subseteq [a, b]$, $\inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) \geq 0$. Therefore, for any $P \in \mathcal{P}$, $L(f, P) \geq 0$, and we obtain that

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(f, P) \geq 0.$$

(4) Define $h: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ by $h(x) = g(x) - f(x)$ for $x \in [a, b]$. By parts (1) and (2), $h = g + (-1)f$ is Riemann integrable and

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b h(x) dx &= \int_a^b g(x) + (-1)f(x) dx = \int_a^b g(x) dx + \int_a^b (-1)f(x) dx \\ &= \int_a^b g(x) dx + (-1) \int_a^b f(x) dx.\end{aligned}$$

Since $f(x) \leq g(x)$, it follows that $h(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, and by part (3), $\int_a^b h(x) dx \geq 0$.

It follows that $\int_a^b g(x) dx - \int_a^b f(x) dx \geq 0$, that is, $\int_a^b f(x) dx \leq \int_a^b g(x) dx$.

(5) We first show that $|f|$ is Riemann integrable. We will do this by showing that

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(|f|, P) \leq \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(|f|, P),$$

since the opposite inequality is trivial.

Let $\varepsilon > 0$. There exists a partition $P \in \mathcal{P}$ such that

$$U(f, P) < \int_a^b f(x) dx + \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

and there exists $P' \in \mathcal{P}$ such that

$$L(f, P') > \int_a^b f(x) dx - \frac{\varepsilon}{2}.$$

Let P'' be the union of P and P' (as in Exercise 6.3). Then

$$U(f, P'') - L(f, P'') \leq U(f, P) - L(f, P') < \varepsilon. \quad (6.13)$$

We next show that

$$U(|f|, P'') - L(|f|, P'') \leq U(f, P'') - L(f, P''). \quad (6.14)$$

We do this termwise by showing that for any subinterval $[c, d] \subseteq [a, b]$,

$$\sup_{x \in [c, d]} |f(x)| - \inf_{x \in [c, d]} |f(x)| \leq \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) - \inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x). \quad (6.15)$$

For any $x, y \in [c, d]$ we have

$$f(x) - f(y) \leq \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) - \inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x)$$

and similarly,

$$f(y) - f(x) \leq \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) - \inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x).$$

It follows that

$$|f(x) - f(y)| \leq \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) - \inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x).$$

By the triangle inequality (in \mathbb{R}),

$$|f(x)| \leq |f(y)| + |f(x) - f(y)|.$$

It follows that

$$|f(x)| \leq |f(y)| + \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) - \inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x)$$

for all $x, y \in [c, d]$, hence

$$\sup_{x \in [c, d]} |f(x)| \leq \inf_{y \in [c, d]} |f(y)| + \sup_{x \in [c, d]} f(x) - \inf_{x \in [c, d]} f(x),$$

which implies (6.15). If we apply (6.15) to each of the subintervals appearing in the upper and lower sums of $|f|$ and f , we obtain (6.14), which, together with (6.13) gives that

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(|f|, P) - \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(|f|, P) \leq U(|f|, P'') - L(|f|, P'') < \varepsilon.$$

Since this is true for all $\varepsilon > 0$, we obtain

$$\inf_{P \in \mathcal{P}} U(|f|, P) - \sup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} L(|f|, P) \leq 0.$$

It follows that $|f|$ is Riemann integrable on $[a, b]$.

To show that $|\int_a^b f(x) dx| \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx$, note that $f(x) \leq |f(x)|$ and $-f(x) \leq |f(x)|$ and apply part (4) to obtain that

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx$$

and

$$-\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^b -f(x) dx \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx,$$

which together gives

$$\left| \int_a^b f(x) dx \right| \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx.$$

(6) Suppose to the contrary that $f(c) \neq 0$ for some $c \in [a, b]$. Thus $f(c) > 0$. Applying the definition of continuity to f at c with $\varepsilon = f(c)/2$, we obtain the existence of $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x \in [a, b]$ with $|x - c| < \delta$ we have $|f(x) - f(c)| < f(c)/2$, from which follows that $f(x) > f(c)/2$. Thus we have $f(x) > f(c)/2$ for all x in an open interval around x_0 . (This also shows that if $c = a$ or $c = b$, then there are other values at which f is positive, so we can choose $c \in (a, b)$ and we may assume without loss of generality that $(x_0 - \delta, x_0 + \delta) \subseteq (a, b)$.)

Let P be the partition $\{a, x_0 - \delta, x_0 + \delta, b\}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_a^b f(x) dx \\ & \geq L(f, P) \\ & = \left(\inf_{x \in [a, x_0 - \delta]} f(x) \right) (x_0 - \delta - a) + \left(\inf_{x \in [x_0 - \delta, x_0 + \delta]} f(x) \right) ((x_0 + \delta) - (x_0 - \delta)) \\ & \quad + \left(\inf_{x \in [x_0 + \delta, b]} f(x) \right) (b - (x_0 + \delta)) \\ & \geq \left(\inf_{x \in [x_0 - \delta, x_0 + \delta]} f(x) \right) ((x_0 + \delta) - (x_0 - \delta)) \\ & \geq \frac{f(c)}{2} \cdot 2\delta > 0, \end{aligned}$$

a contradiction.